

#### DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY

HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS 2 NAVY ANNEX WASHINGTON, DC 20380-1775

> MCO P5060.20 C 06 5 May 03

### MARINE CORPS ORDER P5060.20

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps

To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS DRILL AND CEREMONIES MANUAL

Ref: (a) Marine Corps Manual

Encl: (1) Locator Sheet

- 1. <u>Purpose</u>. The Marine Corps Drill and Ceremonies Manual is designed to provide uniformity and standardization for all Marine Corps organizations. This Manual prescribes procedures for all close order drill and military ceremonial evolutions.
- 2. Cancellation. NAVMC 2691.
- 3. <u>Summary of Revision</u>. This Manual has been revised to incorporate minor changes to existing procedures and rearrange material more logically. Additionally, a large amount of new information has been added to the Manual. This Manual should be reviewed in its entirety.
- 4. <u>Scope</u>. This Manual encompasses all close order drill procedures for use by Marine Corps organizations with the exception of Marine Barracks, Washington, DC. The ceremonies outlined in this Manual are those traditionally executed by Marine Corps units. The only deviation from procedures outlined in this Manual are those authorized by specific provisions of the Manual.
- 5. <u>Recommendation of Modification</u>. Recommendations for improving or modifying the Marine Corps Drill and Ceremonies Manual are invited. Recommended changes will be submitted to the CG, Training and Education Command (TECOM), Quantico, VA.

MCO P5060.20 5 May 03

- 6. <u>Action</u>. COs and all personnel shall familiarize themselves with this Manual.
- 7. Reserve Applicability. This Manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.
- 8. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

EDWARD HANL

By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10207170600

Copy to: 8145001 (1)

# LOCATOR SHEET

Subj:	MARI	NE	CORPS	DR.	ILL	AND	CERI	EMOI	NIES	MANUA	<u> L</u>				
Locatio	on:														
	(	Ind	icate	the	loc	ation	n(s)	of	the	copy(i	es)	of	this	Manua	al.)

# RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

Change	Date of	Date	Signature of Person
Number	Change	Entered	Incorporating Change

# CONTENTS

# CHAPTER

### INTRODUCTION

	PART I: DRILL
1	INTRODUCTION TO DRILL
2	INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT ARMS
3	MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE
4	MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE HANDGUN
5	SWORD MANUAL
6	GUIDON MANUAL
7	NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS
8	SQUAD DRILL
9	PLATOON DRILL
10	COMPANY DRILL
11	BATTALION DRILL
12	REGIMENTAL DRILL
13	INSPECTIONS
14	ORGANIZATIONAL AND PARADE STAFF
	PART II: CEREMONIES
15	GENERAL INFORMATION
16	REVIEWS
17	PARADES

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	
18	PRESENTATION OF DECORATIONS AND INDIVIDUAL RETIREMENT
19	CHANGE OF COMMAND CEREMONY
20	RELIEF AND APPOINTMENT OF THE SERGEANT MAJOR
21	ACTIVATION AND DEACTIVATION CEREMONY
22	HONORS
23	MARINE CORPS BIRTHDAY CAKE CUTTING CEREMONY
24	MESS NIGHT
25	FUNERALS AND MEMORIAL SERVICES
26	LOADING AND CEREMONIAL FIRING OF THE M16 RIFLE
APPENDIX	
A	MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M1 SERVICE RIFLE
В	MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M14 SERVICE RIFLE
С	CEREMONIAL PROPERTY
D	HISTORY CUSTOMS AND COURTESIES AND TRADITIONS OF TH

MESS NIGHT

### INTRODUCTION

One of the cornerstones of Marine Corps customs, courtesies and traditions is our execution of close order drill and ceremonies. These traditions are perpetuated from one generation to the next through constant use and practice. The "esprit de corps" of every Marine has been brought about by their ever-present feeling of pride, not only in their unit, but also in themselves. The preservation of traditional discipline, our customs and courtesies, and the heritage of our Corps is our duty. It is our further duty to see that the same high standard of discipline and esprit de corps is not only preserved, but also further strengthened. These intangibles must be passed on to the future Marines who will take their place among the ranks our Corps.

The object of close order drill is to teach Marines by exercise to obey orders and to do so immediately in the correct way. Close order drill is one foundation of discipline and esprit de corps. Additionally, it is still one of the finest methods for developing confidence and troop leading abilities in our subordinate leaders.

Ceremonial duties are written deep into our history as a Corps. It is no coincidence that among the units famous for ceremonial prowess and spit-and-polish are also to be found some of the worlds most redoubtable fighting formations. The hallmark of the world's fighting organizations, the Roman legions, the Spartans, the Foreign Legion, the British Brigade of Guards and many others is that they are as good on parade as they are in the field or in the attack. While we no longer use drill and formations to align the ranks as was done for the phalanxes of Rome or the squares of Waterloo, drill and ceremony is still the foundation of instilling and developing discipline in any size unit and the individual.

The Marine Corps has long enjoyed a worldwide reputation for sharp appearance and soldierly performance of duties. Our reputation as a Corps is built upon the legacy of those that came before us and puts us on par with the finest military organizations in the world's history. This reputation has been enhanced by continually demonstrating that our execution of peacetime functions is excelled only by our performance in battle.

The special distinction that the Marine Corps has today in regards to drill and ceremonies is best exemplified by the saying "First on foot, and right on the line." This privilege bestowed on the Corps by the Secretary of the Navy on 9 August 1876, gives Marines the place of honor in any Naval formation.

Today we continue the tradition of excellence associated with drill. Beginning with OCS and recruit training we continue to use close order drill as the foundation for developing discipline and esprit de corps. This process is the first step that transforms the civilian into a Marine and then develops the teamwork and unit cohesion. This process then continues in the operating forces through the proper execution of drill and ceremonies to maintain the same level of discipline and esprit de corps found at entry-level training.

This Manual has been the work of many dedicated Marines, past and present. The members of the current drill committee owe all those who have contributed to this collaborative effort a debt of gratitude. Because of this the members of the drill committee in reviewing and updating this Manual have attempted to remain true to this heritage and the traditions of our Corps. This is the first drill manual of the  $21^{\rm st}$  century and we have attempted to provide for the needs of a modern Marine Corps while remaining faithful to the traditions of our past. Extensive research was done to ensure historical accuracy for terms and procedures. Changes were made only to standardize usage and in some cases ensure compliance with other Marine Corps directives. Finally, the intent was to produce a manual that would be easy to use.

# PART I: DRILL

### CHAPTER 1

### INTRODUCTION TO DRILL

		PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL		1000	1-3
DEFINITIO	ONS	1001	1-4
INSTRUCT	ING DRILL	1002	1-10
INSTRUCT	ION GROUPS	1003	1-11
COMMANDS	AND THE COMMAND VOICE	1004	1-11
GENERAL 1	RULES FOR DRILL	1005	1-14
DRILL BY	THE NUMBERS	1006	1-15
MASS COM	MANDS AND INDIVIDUAL COMMANDS FROM RANKS	1007	1-17
ADVANCED	DRILL PROCEDURES	1008	1-18
TABLE OF	SYMBOLS USED IN THIS MANUAL	1009	1-18
	FIGURE		
1-1a	CENTER (ODD NUMBER OF ELEMENTS), DEPTH, AND FRONT		1-4
1-1b	CENTER, EVEN NUMBER OF ELEMENTS		1-5
1-2	DISTANCE AND FILE		1-6
1-3	INTERVAL AND RANK		1-7
1-4	STRONG GRIP ON THE STAFF		1-9
1-5	"V" GRIP ON THE STAFF		1-9
1-6	CORRECT POSITION FOR GIVING COMMANDS		1-13
	TABLE		
1-1	SUGGESTED FOOT TO GIVE MARCHING COMMANDS ON		1-16
1-2	DRILL SYMBOLS		1-19

#### PART I: DRILL

#### CHAPTER 1

#### INTRODUCTION TO DRILL

#### 1000. GENERAL

- 1. The Marine Corps Drill and Ceremonies Manual is designed to provide uniformity and standardization for all Marine Corps organizations. This Manual prescribes procedures for all close order drill and military ceremonial evolutions. Commanders will only deviate from prescribed procedures when expressly authorized for specific provisions of this Manual. The use of ceremonial drill movements authorized for Marine Barracks, Washington DC are not authorized for any other Marine Corps organization.
- 2. Online Access. In addition to the information found in this Manual, organizations and individuals may access the Marine Corps Drill web site by linking from Marine LINK at <a href="http://www.usmc.mil/">http://www.usmc.mil/</a>. This web site not only contains an electronic version of this Manual but also sample LOIs for the various ceremonies described in this Manual.
- 3. Purpose of Drill. Commanders use drill to:
  - a. Move units from one place to another in a standard, orderly manner.
- b. Provide simple formations from which combat formations may be readily assumed.
- c. Teach discipline by instilling habits of precision and automatic response to orders.
- d. Increase the confidence of junior officers and noncommissioned officers through the exercise of command, by the giving of proper commands, and by the control of drilling troops.
  - e. Give troops an opportunity to handle individual weapons.

### 4. Purpose of Formations

- a. To build unit cohesion and esprit de corps by recognizing Marines during awards and promotion ceremonies.
  - b. To maintain continuous accountability and control of personnel.
- c. To provide frequent opportunities to observe the appearance and readiness of the uniforms, arms, and equipment of the individual Marine.
- d. To keep the individual Marine informed by providing the means to pass the word.
  - e. To develop command presence in unit leaders.
- f. To instill and maintain high standards of military bearing and appearance in units and in the individual Marine.

- g. To add color and dignity to the daily routine by reinforcing the traditions of excellence associated with close order drill.
- 5. <u>Scope</u>. This Manual prescribes drill for general use. Diagrams shown must be adapted to the strength of the unit and available space. Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine or feminine gender is used, both men and women are included.
- 1001.  $\underline{\text{DEFINITIONS}}$ . The following definitions are standard terms used throughout this Manual.
- 1. Alignment. The dressing of several elements on a straight line.
- 2. <u>Assembly Area</u>. A designated location for forming units of platoon size or larger in preparation for a parade, review or ceremony.
- 3.  $\underline{\text{Arms}}$ . A term used to normally designate the service rifle but can refer to any weapon. When in formation and a mix of weapons is carried the term arms will be used to designate all types of weapons.
- 4. Base. The element on which a movement is regulated.
- 5. Cadence. A rhythmic rate of march at a uniform step.
- 6. <u>Center</u>. The middle element of a formation with an odd number of elements (See figure 1-1a) or the left center element of a formation with an even number of elements. (See figure 1-1b.)

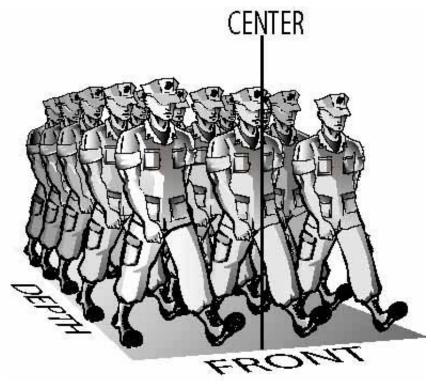


Figure 1-la.--Center (Odd Number of Elements), Depth, and Front.

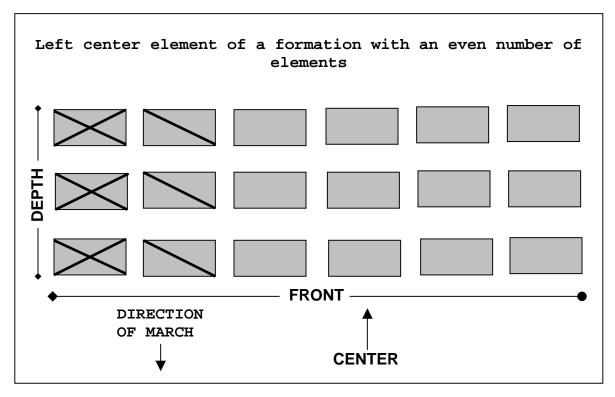


Figure 1-1b.--Center, Even Number of Elements.

- 7. <u>Ceremony</u>. A formal military formation designated to observe a specific occasion.
- 8.  $\underline{\text{Column}}$ . A formation in which elements are placed one behind the other. A section or platoon is in column when members of each squad are one behind the other with the squads abreast of each other.
- 9.  $\underline{\text{Commander of Troops (COT)}}$ . The COT is the senior officer taking part in the ceremony. If an enlisted ceremony the COT is the senior enlisted.
- 10. <u>Depth</u>. The space from head to rear of an element or a formation. (See figure 1-1a.) The depth of an individual is considered to be 12 inches.
- 11. <u>Distance</u>. The space between elements in the direction of depth. Between individuals, the space between your chest and the person to your front. Between vehicles, the space between the front end of a vehicle and the rear of the vehicle to its front. Between troops in formation (either on foot, mounted, or in vehicles), the space from the front of the rear unit to the rear of the unit in front. Platoon commanders, guides, and others whose positions in a formation are 40 inches from a rank are, themselves, considered a rank. Otherwise, commanders and those with them are not considered in measuring distance between units. The color guard is not considered in measuring distance between subdivisions of the unit with which it is posted. In troop formations, the distance between ranks is 40 inches. (See figure 1-2.)

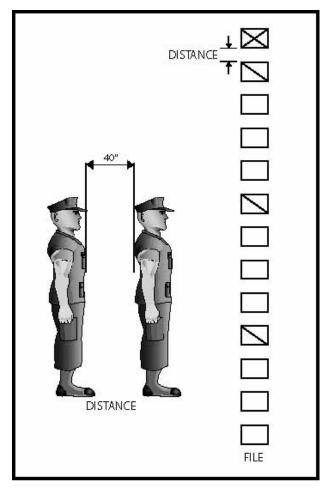


Figure 1-2.--Distance and File.

- 12. <u>Double Time</u>. Cadence at 180 steps (36 inches in length) per minute.
- 13. <u>Element</u>. An individual, squad, section, platoon, company, or other unit that is part of a larger unit.
- 14. <u>Extended Mass Formation</u>. The formation of a company or larger unit in which major elements are in column at close or normal interval and abreast at a specified interval greater than normal interval.
- 15. File. A single column of troops or vehicles one behind the other.
- 16.  $\underline{Flank}$ . The right or left extremity of a unit, either in line or in column. The element on the extreme right or left of the line. A direction at a right angle to the direction an element or a formation is facing.
- 17. <u>Formation</u>. Arrangement of elements of a unit in line, in column, or in any other prescribed manner.
- 18.  $\underline{Front}$ . The space occupied by an element or a formation, measured from one flank to the other. (See figure 1-1a.) The front of an individual is considered to be 22 inches.

- 19. <u>Guide</u>. The individual (base) upon whom a formation, or other elements thereof, regulates its march. To guide: to regulate interval, direction, or alignment; to regulate cadence on a base file (right, left, or center).
- 20. Head. The leading element of a column.
- 21. <u>Interval</u>. The lateral space between elements on the same line. (See figure 1-3.) Interval is measured between individuals from shoulder to shoulder and between vehicles from hub to hub or track to track. It is measured between elements other than individuals and between formations from flank to flank. Unit commanders and those with them are not considered in measuring interval between elements of the unit. Normal interval between individuals is one arm's length. Close interval is the horizontal distance between shoulder and elbow when the left hand is placed on the left hip.

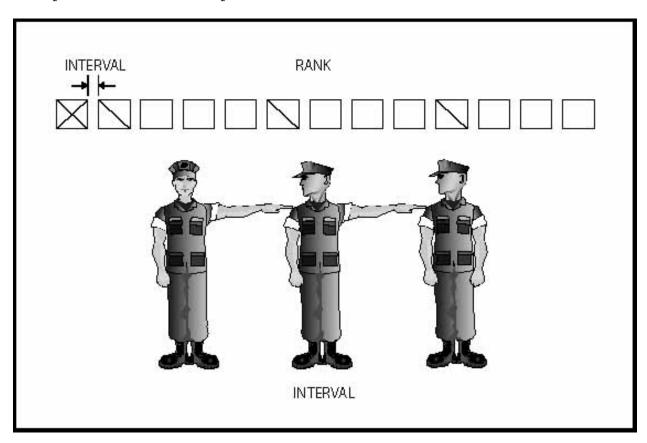


Figure 1-3.--Interval and Rank.

- 22. Left (Right). Extreme left (right) element or edge of a body of troops.
- 23. <u>Line</u>. A formation in which the elements are side by side or abreast of each other. A section or platoon is in line when its squads are in line and one behind the other.
- 24. Line of March. The line on which individuals or units are to march on.
- 25. Line of Troops. The line on which troops are to form when in formation.

- 26. Loosened Sling. Indicates a sling adjusted for the movement sling arms.
- 27. <u>Mass Formation</u>. The formation of a company or larger unit in which the major elements are in column at close interval and abreast at close interval.
- 28. <u>Muffling</u>. The procedure of draping colors for mourning with a mourning streamer or black bunting. It also refers to the process of muffling the musical instruments of a band for specific types of ceremonies.
- 29. Pace. The length of a full step in quick time, 30 inches.
- 30. Parade. A parade is a ceremony that involves the movement of marching units.
- 31. <u>Parade Sling</u>. A sling that has all excess slack removed and is taught. The keeper is adjusted and locked in a position next to the sling tip. The sling lies on the left side of the rifle.
- 32. Piece. An individual firearm such as a rifle.
- 33. <u>Point of Rest</u>. The point toward which all elements of a unit establish their dress or alignment.
- 34. Quick Time. Cadence at 112 to 120 steps (12, 15, or 30 inches in length) per minute. It is the normal cadence for drills and ceremonies.
- 35. Rank. A line of troops or vehicles placed side by side.
- 36. Review. A review is a type of ceremony that omits certain elements found in a parade, but includes an inspection (trooping the line) not found in a parade.
- 37. <u>Rigged</u>. This term refers to the condition when uniforms and equipment are properly fitted out in the manner for which they were intended for use. Swords are considered rigged when attached to the frog (noncommissioned officers) or sword sling (commissioned officer). A Marine is rigged when wearing the prescribed uniform or equipment.
- 38. <u>Slow Time</u>. Cadence at 60 steps per minute. Used for funerals only.
- 39. <u>Snap</u>. In commands or signals, the quality that inspires immediate response. In drill the immediate and smart execution of a movement.
- 40. <u>Step</u>. The distance from heel to heel between the feet of a marching individual. The half step and back step are 15 inches. The right and left steps are 12 inches. The steps in quick and double time are 30 and 36 inches, respectively.
- 41. <u>Strong Grip</u>. The strong grip is when the thumb is wrapped around the front of the staff with the fingers wrapped to the rear. (See figure 1-4.)
- 42. <u>Unit Leader</u>. Is the individual who is drilling the unit. This can be any individual who is conducting drill or can be those assigned a specific billet such as squad leader, platoon sergeant, platoon commander, etc.
- 43. <u>"V" Grip</u>. The "V" grip is with the staff placed in the "V" formed by the thumbs and forefinger with the fingers extended and joined. (See figure 1-5.)



Figure 1-4.--Strong Grip on the Staff.



Figure 1-5.--"V" Grip on the Staff.

### 1002. INSTRUCTING DRILL

- 1. Training personnel in drill is an important duty. From the beginning of their career, officers and noncommissioned officers should take pride in being considered efficient drill instructors. If they know the drill regulations and how to instruct, they will gain the respect and confidence of those they command.
- 2. In addition, good drill instructors must:
- a. Follow regulations strictly, as an example to the personnel under instruction.
  - b. Have energy, patience, and spirit.
  - c. Have military neatness and bearing.
  - d. Observe personnel closely, immediately correcting any mistakes noted.
- 3. When instructing drill movements the system described by the acronym P.C.W.C. will be used to ensure all required information is provided. P.C.W.C. stands for:
  - (P) Purpose of the movement.
  - (C) Number of Counts involved in its execution.
  - (W) When the movement may be executed.
  - (C) Commands to cause the movement to be executed.
- 4. When instructing drill movements for unit movement the system described by the acronym P.F.W.C will be used to ensure all required information is provided. P.F.W.C. stands for:
  - (P) Purpose of the movement.
  - (F) Formation from which the movement is executed.
  - (W) When the movement may be executed.
  - (C) Commands to cause the movement to be executed.
- 5. When the instructor corrects a movement, the individual or unit should immediately be required to repeat the movement properly.
- 6. Before a drill period, an instructor should thoroughly study the movements to be executed.
- 7. Instructors may place themselves wherever they can best control the troops, make corrections, and ensure proper performance.
- 8. The instructor briefly explains and demonstrates each new movement prior to its execution by the troops. The troops should take proper positions unassisted. Each position or movement must be thoroughly understood before another is attempted.
- 9. Drill periods should be short but frequent. Snap should be required in every movement.

### 1003. INSTRUCTION GROUPS

- 1. The basic instruction group is the squad. Its size facilitates individual instruction.
- 2. Individuals who learn slowly should be placed in special squads. The best instructors available should drill these squads.

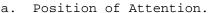
### 1004. COMMANDS AND THE COMMAND VOICE

- 1. There are four types of commands: preparatory commands, commands of execution, combined commands, and supplementary commands. All commands in this Manual are shown in quotation marks, e.g., "Present, ARMS" and bold print.
- a. The preparatory command indicates a movement is to be made and may also indicate the direction of the movement. In this Manual, preparatory commands are shown beginning with a capital letter followed by lower case letters. The comma indicates a pause between the preparatory command and the command of execution. Examples would be "Forward," "Left," "Platoon," "About," etc.
- b. The command of execution causes the desired movement to be executed. In this Manual, commands of execution are shown in **CAPITAL LETTERS**. Examples would be "MARCH," "FACE," "ATTENTION," etc.
- c. With the combined command, the preparatory command and the command of execution are combined. In this Manual combined commands are shown in <a href="UNDERLINED">UNDERLINED</a> CAPITAL LETTERS. Examples would be "AT EASE," "REST," "FALL IN," etc.
- d. Supplementary commands are commands that cause the component units to act individually. An example would be the commands squad leaders would give to their individual squads following the platoon commander's preparatory command, "Column of Files From the Right," and before the command of execution "MARCH." In this Manual supplementary commands may be shown as preparatory commands, commands of execution or combined commands, depending on the movement.
- 2. When giving commands, commanders face their troops.
- a. For company formations or larger, when commanding marching troops from the head of a column or massed formations, commanders march backward while giving commands.
- b. When commanding a unit that is part of a larger unit, commanders turn their heads to give commands, but do not face about except when the unit is halted and the smaller units are in line. In this case, the leader faces about to give all commands except to repeat preparatory commands, for which turning the head is sufficient.
- 3. Commanders of platoons and larger units, when drilling as a part of a still larger unit, repeat all preparatory commands or give the proper new command or warning. There are three exceptions to this.
- a. The first is that no repetition is necessary for combined commands such as "FALL IN," "FALL OUT," "REST," or "AT EASE."
- b. The second is that no repetition of command is necessary when a unit is in mass formation.

- c. The third exception is that no repetition of command is necessary during parades and ceremonies where the commander of troops, adjutant, etc., may be clearly heard by all hands or the commander of troops and adjutant, give combined commands and subordinate unit commanders cause their units to execute the command independently. (e.g., when the regimental commander gives the combined command to "PORT ARMS" subordinate battalion commanders would give the command of "Port, ARMS" so that their battalion would execute the command as an independent unit of the regiment.)
- 4. If at a halt, the commands for movements, which involve marching at quick time in a direction other than to the direct front, such as "Column Right, MARCH," are not prefaced by the preparatory command, "Forward."
- 5. The only commands that use unit designations, such as "Battalion" or "Company," as preparatory commands are "ATTENTION" and "HALT." Such commands shall have no further designation added (e.g., "First Battalion, ATTENTION" or "Company C, HALT"). Commands shall be given only as stated herein.
- 6. A command must be given loud enough to be heard by all members of a unit.
- a. Good posture, proper breathing, and the correct use of throat and mouth muscles help develop a commander's voice.
- b. Projecting the voice enables one to be heard at maximum range without undue strain. To project a command, commanders must focus their voices on the most distant individuals. Good exercises for voice projection are:
  - (1) Yawning to get the feel of the open mouth and throat.
- (2) Counting and saying the vowel sounds "oh" and "ah" in a full, firm voice.
  - (3) Giving commands at a uniform cadence, prolonging each syllable.
- (4) When practicing, stand erect, breathe properly, keep the mouth open wide, and relax the throat.
- c. The diaphragm is the most important muscle in breathing. It is the large horizontal muscle that separates the chest from the abdomen. It automatically controls normal breathing, but must be developed to give commands properly. Deep breathing exercises are one good method of developing the diaphragm. Another is to take a deep breath, hold it, open the mouth, relax the throat muscles, and snap out a series of fast "hats" or "huts." Expelling short puffs of air from the lungs should make these sounds. If properly done, you can feel the stomach muscles tighten as the sounds are made.
- d. The throat, mouth, and nose act as amplifiers. They give fullness to and help project the voice. In giving commands, the throat should be relaxed. The lower jaw and lips should be loose. The mouth should be open wide and the vowel sounds (a, e, i, o, u) should be prolonged. Consonants (letters other than vowels) and word endings should be curt and sharply cut off.
- e. The position of attention is the proper position for giving commands (See figure 1-6a). A leader's bearing will be emulated. If it is military, junior personnel will be inspired to respond to commands with snap and precision.

- f. Distinct commands inspire troops. Indistinct commands confuse them. All commands can be given correctly without loss of effect or cadence. To give distinct commands, you must emphasize enunciation; make full use of the tongue, lips, and lower jaw; practice giving commands slowly, carefully, and in cadence; and then increase the rate of delivery until the proper rhythm (112 to 120 beats per minute) is reached and each syllable is distinct. Raising the hand to the mouth to aid in projecting commands is not proper.
  - g. Inflection is the rise and fall in pitch, the tone changes of the voice.
- (1) Preparatory commands should be delivered with a rise and inflection in the voice. (e.g., "BaaaTAL ion," "PlaaaTOON," "FooreWARD," "TO the REAR," etc.) In particular those preparatory commands that cause supplemental movements should be heavily accentuated on the last syllable. (e.g., The command "Present, ARMS" the preparatory command Preee(pause) ZENT" causes those armed with swords to execute the first count of the movement and the national color to go to the carry. Another example is "Officers, Center, MARCH." On the preparatory command of "Officers" those armed with swords go to the carry, on the preparatory command of "CennnTER" the officer's step and/or face)
- (2) A command of execution is given in a sharper and higher pitch than the tone of the preparatory command's last syllable. A good command of execution has no inflection, but it must have snap. It should be delivered with sharp emphasis, ending like the crack of a whip. If properly given, troops will react to it with snap and precision.
- (3) Combined commands such as "FALL IN" are delivered without inflection. They are given in the uniform high pitch and loudness of a command of execution.







b. Right Shoulder Arms.

Figure 1-6.--Correct Position for Giving Commands.

### 1005. GENERAL RULES FOR DRILL

- 1. Certain drill movements may be made toward either flank. This Manual explains such movements in one direction only. To move to the other direction, it is necessary to substitute the word "left" for "right" as shown in parentheses.
- 2. The command, "AS YOU WERE," cancels a movement or order started but not completed. At this command, troops should resume their former positions.
- 3. While marching, alignment is maintained toward the right, except:
- a. Upon the command "GUIDE LEFT" or "GUIDE CENTER," alignment is maintained toward the left or center until the command "GUIDE RIGHT" is given.
- b. Regardless of the direction in which alignment is established, at the command of execution for a drill movement involving marching, the direction of alignment is toward direction of the movement. (e.g., if the command of "Column Left, MARCH" is given, the unit aligns to the left until the column movement is completed.) Upon completion of the drill movement, alignment will be in the direction established prior to commencing the movement.
- c. In a column of platoons, the guide of the leading platoon controls direction and distance, and maintains the cadence counted by the commander. Guides of the following platoons control distances and follow the direction and cadence set by the leading guide.
- 4. Slight changes in direction are made by:
- a. Adding "Half" to the preparatory command for turning or column movements; for example, "Column Half Right (Left), MARCH," changes direction 45 degrees.
- b. At the command "INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)," guides change their direction of march slightly to the right (left).
- 5. Platoons in a company and individuals in a squad are numbered from right to left in line, and from front to rear in column. Squads in a platoon are numbered from front to rear in line and from left to right in column.
- 6. Posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidon bearers, and special units are shown in figures or explained later in this Manual.
- a. Changes of post are made by the most direct route unless specifically prescribed. The movement is made as soon as possible after the command of execution. Persons who have duties in connection with the movement take their new posts after those duties have been performed. Individuals moving from one post to another or aligning units must maintain military bearing. All necessary facings and changes of direction must be made as if drilling.
- b. After the initial formation, guidon bearers and special units maintain their positions with respect to the flank or end of the organization with which they were originally posted.
- c. All officers or noncommissioned officers commanding armed troops will be armed. When giving commands, drilling troops, or making reports, the rifle will be carried at right shoulder arms (See figure 1-6b), the sword will be carried at the

carry sword position, and the pistol will be carried in the holster. Facing movements by commanders of armed troops may be executed while at right shoulder arms.

- 7. Whenever drill movements are executed while troops are marching, the command of execution is given as the left foot strikes the deck if the movement is to the left, and as the right foot strikes the deck if the movement is to the right. The one exception is when executing left shoulder arms from port arms; the command of execution will be given on the right foot. (See table 1-1 for the suggested foot to give commands on while marching.)
- 8. The cadence of commands should be that of quick time, even though no marching is involved. The pause between preparatory commands and commands of execution should be adapted to the size and formation of the unit.
- a. The best pause to allow for a squad or platoon while marching is one count or step between the two commands. (See table 1-1 for the suggested foot to give commands on while marching.)
- (1) To develop the proper cadence for commands at a halt, count ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR in quick time. Then give commands, such as "Right, FACE," without interrupting the cadence:

ONE TWO THREE FOUR "Right, (Pause) FACE"

- (2) Marching commands, such as "By the Right Flank, MARCH," must be started so the preparatory command will end as the foot in the desired direction of movement strikes the deck. There is then a full count before the command of execution, which is given on the same foot. (See table 1-1 for the suggested foot to give commands on while marching.)
- b. For a company or larger unit, the intervals must be longer. This is necessary for leaders of component units to repeat preparatory commands, give warning, or supplementary commands. The following example shows the proper cadence for the command "Right, FACE" to a company:

ONE TWO THREE FOUR
(Company (Platoon (Company
Commander) Commander) Commander)
"Right, {"Right"} FACE"

#### 1006. DRILL BY THE NUMBERS

1. Drill movements may be divided into individual motions for instruction. When drill is executed by the numbers, the first motion is made on the command of execution. Subsequent motions are made in proper order on the commands TWO, THREE, FOUR, the number of counts depending upon the number of motions in the movement. To use this method, the command "BY THE NUMBERS" precedes the preparatory command. All movements are then executed by the numbers until the command "WITHOUT NUMBERS" is given.

RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	WHEN GIVEN
		"Squad,	(Step)	HALT"		From column or flank
	"Pla	toon,	(Step)	HALT"		From column or flank
	"Com	pa	(Step)	HALT"		From column or flank
		ey	(2221)			
	"Right	Turn,	(Step)	MARCH"		While marching in
						company mass the color
	<u> </u>	( )				guard or staff
"Left	Turn,	(Step)	MARCH"			" " "
"Counter	March,	(Step)	MARCH"			For color guards.
"Mark	Time,	(Step)	MARCH"			May be given as either
Marie	TIME,	(BCCP)	THICH			foot strikes the deck
	"Mark	Time,	(Step)	MARCH"		from line, column or
						oblique
"Half	Step,	(Step)	MARCH"			May be given as either
	»	a.	( ( )	MAD GIL!		foot strikes the deck
	"Half	Step,	(Step)	MARCH"		from line, column or oblique
"For	ward,	(Step)	MARCH"			From mark time or half
101	wara,	(BCCP)	THICH			step in column or
						flank
"By	the	Flank,	(Step)	MARCH"		From column or flank
Rig						
	"By	the	Flank,	(Step)	MARCH"	From column or flank
RIGHT	LEFT	ft RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	WHEN GIVEN
KIGHI	"Column	Right,	(Step)	MARCH"	LEFI	From column
"Column	Left,	(Step)	MARCH"	11111011		From column
"Column	Half	Right,	(Step)	MARCH"		From column
COLUMNI	"Column	Half	Left,	(Step)	MARCH"	From column
					MARCH	
	"To	the	(Step)	MARCH"		From column or flank
	Po:					
	Rea "Right		(Step)	MARCH"		From column
	"Right		(Step)	MARCH"		From column
"For	"Right blic	t O	(Step)  MARCH"	MARCH"		From column From right oblique
"For	"Right blic	t O gue,		MARCH"		
	"Right blio ward,	t 0 que, (Step)	MARCH"	MARCH"		From right oblique
	"Right blic ward, toon,	t O que, (Step)	MARCH" HALT"			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching
	"Right blic ward, toon,	t O que, (Step)	MARCH" HALT"			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark
"Pla	"Right blic ward, toon, "In	(Step) (Step) Place,	MARCH" HALT" (Step)			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step.
	"Right blic ward, toon,	t O que, (Step)	MARCH" HALT"			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in
"Pla	"Right blic ward, toon, "In	(Step) (Step) Place,	MARCH" HALT" (Step)			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique
"Pla	"Right blic ward, toon, "In	(Step) (Step) Place,	MARCH" HALT" (Step)			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in
"Pla	"Right blic ward, toon, "In	(Step) (Step) Place,	MARCH" HALT" (Step)			From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt,
"Pla "Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume, O	(Step) (Step) Place, (Step)	MARCH"  HALT"  (Step)  MARCH"	HALT"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column
"Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume,	(Step) (Step) Place, (Step)	MARCH"  HALT"  (Step)  MARCH"	HALT"  MARCH"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column From left oblique
"Pla "Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume, O	(Step) Place, (Step) (Step)	MARCH"  (Step)  MARCH"	HALT"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column
"Pla "Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume, O que, "For	(Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) ward,	MARCH"  (Step)  MARCH"  MARCH"	HALT"  MARCH"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column From left oblique From left oblique To halt in the left
"Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume, O que, "For "Pla	(Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) ward, toon,	MARCH"  (Step)  MARCH"  MARCH"  (Step)  (Step)	HALT"  MARCH"  HALT"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column  From left oblique From left oblique To halt in the left oblique while marching
"Re	"Right blick ward, toon, "In sume, O que, "For "Pla	(Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) (Step) ward, toon,	MARCH"  (Step)  MARCH"  MARCH"  (Step)  (Step)	HALT"  MARCH"  HALT"		From right oblique From right oblique To halt in the right oblique while marching at quick time, mark time or half step. To resume marching in the left/right oblique from in place halt, mark time or half step From column From left oblique From left oblique To halt in the left

Table 1-1.--Suggested Foot to Give Marching Commands On.

RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	WHEN GIVEN
"Close,	(Step)	MARCH"				To close the interval
						in column marching
"Ex	tend,	(Step)	MARCH"			To extend the interval
						in column marching
"Count	Cad	ence,	(Step)	COUNT"		From column
"De	lay	Cad	ence,	(Step)	COUNT"	From column
е	d					
	CC	MMANDS FOR	R THE MANU	AL OF ARMS	WHILE MAR	RCHING
"Port,	(Step)	ARMS"				From left shoulder
"Left	Shoul	der,	(Step)	ARMS"		From port arms
	"Left	Shoul	der,	(Step)	ARMS"	From right shoulder
"Right	Shoul	der,	(Step)	ARMS"		From left shoulder or
						port
	"Port,	(Step)	ARMS"			From right shoulder
RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	WHEN GIVEN

Table 1-1.--Suggested Foot to Give Marching Commands On--Continued.

### 1007. MASS COMMANDS AND INDIVIDUAL COMMANDS FROM RANKS

- 1. <u>Mass Commands</u>. The use of mass commands in drill develops confidence and team spirit. It also teaches troops to give and execute commands properly.
- a. The initial command is "At Your Command." The instructor then gives a preparatory command that describes the movement, for example, "At Your Command, Face the Platoon to the Right, COMMAND." After this, all members of the platoon command, "Right, FACE" together and execute it. Another mass command example is "At Your Command, Call the Platoon to Attention, COMMAND." The troops command, "Platoon, ATTENTION."
- b. Marching movements may be conducted in a similar manner as follows: "ALL MOVEMENTS UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE WILL BE AT YOUR COMMAND."
- (1) INSTRUCTOR: "Call the Platoon to Attention, COMMAND." TROOPS: "Platoon, ATTENTION."
  - (2) INSTRUCTOR: "Forward, COMMAND." TROOPS: "Forward, MARCH."
- (3) INSTRUCTOR: "By the Right Flank, COMMAND." TROOPS: "By the Right Flank, MARCH."
- c. Only simple movements with short preparatory commands are used for mass commands. Preparatory commands that require supplemental commands by subordinate leaders are not used.
- d. In order to return to normal drill methods, the instructor orders "At My Command."
- 2. <u>Individual Commands From Ranks</u>. As an aid in training individuals to give commands properly, personnel in ranks may be designated to give individual commands. This should be done only after a unit has learned to execute commands and give mass commands. The instructor designates the individual who is to give the command by name or place in ranks. He may be designated while the unit is

marching or halted. The instructor describes the movement to be made, as in mass commands, but does not add "COMMAND." The designated individual remains in position and gives the appropriate command, executing the command with the unit.

3. <u>Counting Cadence</u>. Counting cadence by troops in ranks teaches them group coordination and rhythm. The command is "Count Cadence, COUNT" or "Delayed Cadence, COUNT." The command of execution being given as the left foot hits the deck. Everyone then counts cadence for 8 steps, starting when the left foot next strikes the deck. They should be required to do so in a firm, vigorous manner.

"Count Cadence, COUNT"										
Step	LE	FT RI	GHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	Γ LEF	T RI	GHT
Count	On	e Tw	70	Three	Four	One	Two	Thr	ee Fo	ur
"Delayed Cadence, COUNT"										
Step	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT
Count	One		Two		Three		Four		One	
	Two		Three		Four		One	Two	Three	Four
	One	Two	Three	Four	(Unit	ed)(Sta	tes)(Ma	arine)(	Corps)	

### 1008. ADVANCED DRILL PROCEDURES

1. <u>Cadence Drill (Speed Drill)</u>. Cadence drill is an advanced form of drill. It is used only with Marines who have learned basic drill as prescribed in this Manual. It provides variety for well-trained troops and "livens up" a drill period. In cadence drill, the commander, abbreviates preparatory commands and deletes the pause between the preparatory command and the command of execution. Each time a commander uses this form of drill, he must explain that the unit is departing from prescribed drill. Cadence drill is suitable for platoon and smaller units. Examples of cadence drill are:

Count One	Two	Three	Four	One
Step	LEFT	RIGHT	LEFT	RIGHT
Command (s)		"Right	Flank	MARCH"
	"Left	Flank	MARCH"	
	"Rear	MARCH"		

2. <u>Trick Drill</u>. As with cadence drill, this form of drill is used only with troops who have thoroughly learned all prescribed drill and cadence drill. Additionally, it may be used as a motivating device for well-trained troops. It is extremely complex and requires extensive training and rehearsals. Trick drills are not described in this Manual. They are limited only by the imagination of the drill instructor.

#### 1009. TABLE OF SYMBOLS USED IN THIS MANUAL

1. Table 1-2 shows the symbols used in this Manual.

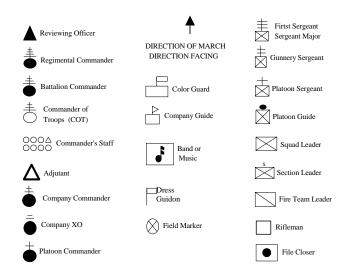


Table 1-2.--Drill Symbols.

# PART I: DRILL

### CHAPTER 2

### INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT ARMS

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	2000	2-3
GEOGRAPH 1. DOCUMENTONS		
SECTION 1: POSITIONS		
ATTENTION	2100	2-5
REST	2101	2-6
EYES RIGHT (LEFT)	2102	2-7
FACING MOVEMENTS	2103	2-8
HAND SALUTES	2104	2-9
SECTION 2: STEPS AND MARCHING		
bleffon 2. bill b fan fan eine		
GENERAL	2200	2-11
QUICK TIME	2201	2-11
DOUBLE TIME	2202	2-11
HALT	2203	2-12
MARK TIME	2204	2-13
DOUBLE TIME IN PLACE	2205	2-13
HALF STEP	2206	2-14
SIDE STEP	2207	2-14
BACK STEP	2208	2-14
TO FACE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) IN MARCHING	2209	2-15
TO FACE TO THE REAR WHILE MARCHING	2210	2-15
TO MARCH TO THE FLANK	2211	2-16
TO CHANGE STEP	2212	2-17
TO MARCH AT EASE	2213	2-17
TO MARCH AT ROUTE STEP	2214	2-17
TO RESUME MARCHING AT QUICK TIME FROM ROUTE STEP OR AT EASE .	2215	2-17

		PAGE
	FIGURE	
2-1	POSITION OF ATTENTION	2-6
2-2	POSITION OF PARADE REST	2-7
2-3	RIGHT FACE	2-8
2-5	ABOUT FACE	2-9
2-6	HAND SALUTE	2-10

### PART I: DRILL

### CHAPTER 2

### INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT ARMS

### 2000. GENERAL

- 1. Individual movements form the basis for building unit formations and movements.
- 2. Movements that can be executed from both the halt and while on the march should be explained, demonstrated, and practiced from the halt first.

#### SECTION 1: POSITIONS

- 2100. <u>ATTENTION</u>. The position of attention (see figure 2-1) is the basic military position from which most other drill movements are executed. There are no counts, however, there are seven steps in describing the position:
- 1. Smartly bring your left heel against the right.
- 2. Turn your feet out equally to form an angle of 45 degrees. Keep your heels on the same line and touching.
- 3. Your legs should be straight, but not stiff at the knees.
- 4. Keep your hips and shoulders level and your chest lifted.
- 5. Your arms should be straight, but not stiff at the elbows; thumbs along the trouser seams, palms facing inward toward your legs, and fingers joined in their natural curl.
- 6. Keep your head and body erect. Look straight ahead. Keep your mouth closed and your chin pulled in slightly.
- 7. Stand still and do not talk.
- 8. The movement may be executed when halted, at any position of rest, or while marching at route step or at ease. The commands are "FALL IN" and "ATTENTION." On the command "FALL IN," you would assume your position in ranks at the position of attention. The command "ATTENTION" is always preceded by a preparatory command designated by the size of the unit, such as "Squad, Platoon," or "Company." For example, when drilling a squad the command to bring them to attention would be "Squad, ATTENTION." Thereafter, they move only as ordered until given "AT EASE," "REST," "FALL OUT," or they are dismissed.
- 9. When at a position of rest or while marching at route step or at ease and the command "ATTENTION" is given, the following applies:
  - a. When given at parade rest, come to attention.
- b. When given at ease or rest, assume the position of parade rest on the preparatory command "Squad." When "ATTENTION" is given go to that position.
- c. When given while marching at route step or at ease, get in step as soon as possible and continue to march at attention.







a. Front View.

b. Side View.

c. Rear View.

Figure 2-1.--Position of Attention.

2101. <u>REST</u>. There are four positions of rest for halted troops. They are parade rest, at ease, rest, and fall out. The purpose of rest is to give troops a rest from the position of attention. Parade rest, at ease, and rest, are one-count movements. Fall out is not a precision movement and has no counts. All are executed from the position of attention. The commands are "Parade, REST;" "AT EASE;" "REST;" and "FALL OUT."

- 1. Parade Rest. On the preparatory command "Parade," shift the weight of your body to the right leg without noticeable movement. On the command of execution "REST," and for the count of one, move the left foot twelve inches (measured from the inside of each heel) smartly to the left. The heels remain on line and the body weight rests equally on both legs. At the same time the left foot is moved, clasp the hands behind the back. The left hand is placed just below the belt and the right hand is placed inside the left. The thumb of the right hand lightly grasps the thumb of the left. All fingers are extended and joined with the palms to the rear. The elbows will be in line with the body. Silence and immobility are required. (See figure 2-2.) The only command you may receive while at parade rest is "ATTENTION."
- 2. At Ease. The command is "AT EASE." It is executed in one count. At the command, keep your right foot in place. You may move about, but must not talk. You may also be given this command when not in ranks. In this case, it means cease talking, but continue whatever you were doing before the command. When in ranks, the only command you may receive while at ease is "ATTENTION."
- 3. Rest. The command is "REST." It is executed in one count. At the command, you may move and talk; however, you must keep your right foot in place. The only command you may receive while at rest is "ATTENTION."
- 4. <u>Fall Out</u>. The command is <u>"FALL OUT."</u> At the command, leave your position in ranks, but remain nearby or proceed to a pre-designated area. When <u>"FALL IN"</u> is given, return to your place in ranks at the position of attention.







a. Front View.

b. Side View.

c. Rear View.

Figure 2-2.--Position of Parade Rest.

- 2102. EYES RIGHT (LEFT). The purpose of eyes right (left) is to demonstrate military courtesy to reviewing officers and dignitaries during parades and ceremonies. It is executed in one count when halted at attention or marching at quick time. The command is "Eyes, RIGHT (LEFT)." The command to turn the head back to the position of attention is "Ready, FRONT."
- 1. When the command of execution "RIGHT (LEFT)" is given, turn your head smartly and look 45 degrees to the right (left) keeping your shoulders square to the front.
- 2. On the command of execution **"FRONT,"** turn your head and eyes smartly back to the front. During reviews at which the reviewing officer troops the line, ready front will not be given after eyes right. At such ceremonies, turn your head and eyes smartly toward the reviewing officer upon the command of execution **"RIGHT."** As he passes to the left, follow the reviewing officer with your head and eyes until you are looking directly to the front.
- 3. When marching, give the command, "Eyes, RIGHT" so that the command of execution is given as the right foot strikes the deck and the command "Eyes, LEFT" so that the command of execution is given as the left foot strikes the deck. Give the command "Ready, FRONT" from eyes right so that the command of execution is given as the left foot strikes the deck and "Ready, FRONT" from eyes left so that the command of execution is given as the right foot strikes the deck. For example:

<u>LEFT</u>	RIGHT <b>"Eyes</b> ,	LEFT RIGHT (Step) RIGHT"	
"Ready,	(Step)	FRONT" (From "Eyes, RIGHT")	
"Eyes,	(Step)	LEFT"	
	"Ready,	Step) FRONT" (From "Eyes, LEFT"	")

- 2103. <u>FACING MOMENTS</u>. The purpose of facing movements is to face a unit to the right, left or about. Facing movements are executed in two counts when halted at attention. The commands are "Right, FACE;" "Left, FACE;" and "About, FACE." Facing movements are executed in the cadence of quick time. While facing, your arms should not swing out from your sides, but remain at the position of attention.
- 1. "Right, FACE" is a two-count movement. (See figure 2-3.)
- a. On count one, (see figure. 2-3b) at the command **"FACE,"** raise your left heel and right toe slightly. Turn to the right on your right heel and left toe. Keep your left leg straight but not stiff.
- b. On count two (see figure 2-3c), place the left foot smartly beside the right and stand at attention.
- 2. "Left, FACE" is executed in the same manner described in 2103.1 above, substituting left for right and right for left.







a. Start.

b. Count One.

c. Count Two.

Figure 2-3.--Right Face.

- 3. "About, FACE" is a two-count movement. (See figure 2-5.)
- a. At the command "About," shift your weight to your left leg without noticeable movement. (See figure 2-5a.)
- b. On count one (see figure 2-5b) at the command **"FACE,"** place our right toe half a foot length behind and slightly to the left of your heel. Do not change the position of your left foot. Rest your weight evenly on the left heel and the ball of the right foot.
- c. On count two (see figure 2-5c), turn smartly to the right until facing rear. The turn is made on the left heel and ball of the right foot. The knees remain straight, but not locked during the movement. Your thumbs will remain on the seams of your trousers. If properly executed you will be at the position of attention facing in the opposite direction.







b. Count Two.



c. Finish.

Figure 2-5.--About Face.

#### 2104. HAND SALUTES

- 1. The purpose of the hand salute is to demonstrate mutual respect and courtesy between members of military organizations and to show respect to national colors. It is executed in one count when halted at attention, marching at quick time, or seated in a vehicle. The command is "Hand, SALUTE." To return to the position of attention the command is "Ready, TWO."
- a. When "SALUTE" is given, raise your right hand smartly in the most direct manner until the tip of your forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress above and slightly right of your right eye. Your fingers should be extended straight and joined with the thumb along the forefinger. You should be able to see your entire palm when looking straight ahead. Your upper arm should be parallel with the deck with the elbow in line with the body and your forearm at a 45-degree angle. Your wrist and hand should be straight, a continuation of the line made by your forearm. At the same time, if not in ranks, turn your head and eyes toward the person or colors you are saluting.
- b. At the command "TWO," return to attention. Move your hand smartly in the most direct manner back to its normal position by your side.
- c. To ensure simultaneous execution of the second movement of the hand salute when troops are in formation, the preparatory command "Ready," will be used prior to the command of execution "TWO."
- 2. You may salute without command from attention, while walking, or while seated in a vehicle. When walking, it is not necessary to halt to salute. Keep walking, but at attention. The salute is rendered when the person or colors to be saluted is at a 6-pace distance, or at the nearest point of approach if it is apparent that the person or color is not going to approach within 6 paces. The salute will not be rendered if the person (color) to be saluted does not approach within 30 paces.

Hold the first position of the salute until the person (color) saluted has passed or the salute is returned, then execute the second movement of the hand salute.

3. When the command "Present, ARMS" is given, if not armed, you execute the hand salute on the command "ARMS." Stay at that position until the command "Ready, TWO" or "Order, ARMS" is given.

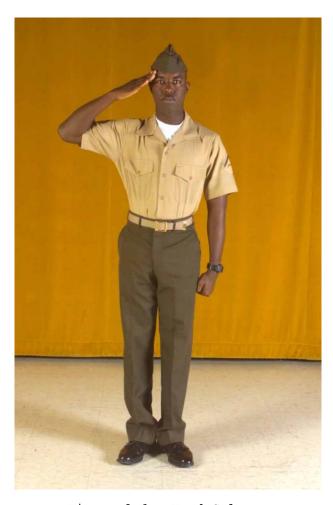


Figure 2-6.--Hand Salute.

## SECTION 2: STEPS AND MARCHING

# 2200. GENERAL

- 1. With the exception of right step, all steps and marching movements beginning from a halt start with the left foot.
- 2. The instructor indicates the proper rhythm by counting cadence.
- 3. To change direction on the march, the command of execution is given as the foot in the desired direction of the turn strikes the deck.
- 2201. QUICK TIME. The purpose of quick time is to march at 112 to 120 steps per minute taking 30-inch steps. It may be executed when halted at attention, marking time, marching forward at double time, or marching at half step. The commands are "Forward, MARCH" or "Quick Time, MARCH."
- 1. When halted, the command to march forward at quick time is "Forward, MARCH."
- 2. On "Forward," shift your weight to the right leg without noticeable movement.
- 3. On "MARCH," step off smartly, left foot first, and march straight ahead with 30-inch steps. Swing your arms easily in their natural arcs, 6 inches straight to the front and 3 inches to the rear. Do not exaggerate movements.
- 2202. <u>DOUBLE TIME</u>. The purpose of double time is to march at 180 steps per minute taking 36-inch steps. It may be executed when halted at attention, marking time, double timing in place, or marching forward at quick time. The command is "Double Time, MARCH." When given while marching, the command "MARCH" may be given as either foot strikes the deck.

## 1. When Halted

- a. At the command "Double Time," shift your weight to your right leg without noticeable movement.
- b. On "MARCH," step off on the left foot and begin an easy run, taking 180, 36-inch steps per minute. At the same time raise your forearms until parallel with the deck and make fists of your hands.

#### 2. When Marching at Quick Time

- a. When the command "MARCH" is given, take one more 30-inch step.
- b. Step off in double time.

## 3. To Resume Quick Time, the Command is "Quick Time, MARCH"

- a. On "MARCH," take one more 36-inch step.
- b. Lower your arms and slow to quick time.

## 4. When Marching in Place

- a. Take one more step in mark time (or double time in place).
- b. Step off forward in double time.

2203. <u>HALT</u>. The purpose of halt is to stop the movement of a marching unit. It is executed in two counts when marching at quick time, and three counts when marching at double time. It may be executed when marching at quick time, half step, double time, side step, back step, mark time, and double time in place. The command of execution is "HALT," which is always preceded by a preparatory command designated by the size of the unit, such as "Squad, Platoon," or "Company." The command of execution may be given as either foot strikes the deck except for side step.

# 1. While Marching at Quick Time or Half Step

- a. Take one more step after "HALT."
- b. Bring the rear heel forward against the other.

## 2. While Marching at Double Time

- a. Take one more double time step after "HALT."
- b. Take another at quick time.
- c. Bring the rear heel forward against the other.

# 3. While Marching at Right (Left) Step

- a. The command "HALT" is given when the heels are together.
- b. Take one more side step after "HALT."
- c. Bring the heels together.

## 4. While Backward Marching

- a. Take one more back step after "HALT."
- b. Bring the forward heel back against the other.

## 5. While Marching at Mark Time

- a. Take one more step in place after the command "HALT."
- b. Bring the heels together.

## 6. While Marching at in Place Double Time

- a. Take one more in place double time step after the command "HALT."
- b. Take another at quick time.
- c. Bring the heels together.

2204. MARK TIME. The purpose of mark time is to march in place at quick time cadence. It may be executed when halted at attention, double timing in place, marching at half step and marching forward at quick time. While marching, the command may be given as either foot strikes the deck. The command is "Mark Time, MARCH."

#### 1. When Halted

- a. On the command "Mark Time," shift your weight to your right leg slightly without noticeable movement.
- b. On the command "MARCH," beginning with your left foot, then alternating, raise each foot so that the ball of the foot is approximately 2 inches and the heel approximately 4 inches from the deck at a cadence of quick time. At the same time, swing your arms naturally as in marching.

## 2. When Marching at Quick Time

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more 30-inch step as if coming to a halt.
- b. Bring your heels together. Begin marking time without loss of cadence with the opposite foot.

## 3. To Resume the March at Quick Time, The Command is "Forward, MARCH"

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more step in place.
- b. Step off with a 30-inch step.

## 4. When Marching at Double Time in Place

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more step in place at double time.
- b. Commence marking time.
- 2205. <u>DOUBLE TIME IN PLACE</u>. The purpose of double time in place is to march in place at double time cadence. It may be executed when halted at attention, marking time, or marching forward at double time. The command is "In Place Double Time, MARCH."

#### 1. When Halted

- a. On the command **"In Place Double Time,"** shift your weight to your right leg without noticeable movement.
- b. On the command "MARCH," raise your arms for double time. Starting with the left foot, alternating and in place, raise your feet 6 inches above the deck at 180 steps per minute.

## 2. When Marching at Double Time

- a. After "MARCH," take two more double time steps.
- b. Bring your feet together and begin double timing in place without loss of cadence.

## 3. The Command "Double Time, MARCH" Resumes the March at Double Time

- a. At "MARCH," take two more steps in place.
- b. Step off with 180, 36-inch steps per minute.

# 4. When Marking Time

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more step in mark time.
- b. Commence marching at double time in place.
- 2206. <u>HALF STEP</u>. The purpose of half step is to march forward at quick time taking 15-inch steps. It may be executed when halted at attention or marching forward at quick time. While marching it may be given as either foot strikes the deck. The command is "Half Step, MARCH."

## 1. At the Halt

- a. On the command "Half Step," shift your weight to your right leg without noticeable movement.
- b. On the command "MARCH," step off forward in quick time cadence with 15-inch steps. The balls of your feet should strike the deck before your heels. At the same time begin swinging your arms 6 inches to the front and 3 inches to the rear.

## 2. Marching in Quick Time

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more 30-inch step.
- b. Begin the 15-inch steps as explained above. (See paragraph 2206.1.)
- 3. To resume quick time from half step, the command is "Forward, MARCH." It may be given as either foot strikes the deck.
  - a. On "MARCH," take one more half step.
  - b. Step off at quick time.
- 2207. <u>SIDE STEP</u>. The purpose of side step is to move the unit a short distance to the right or left. There are no counts, however there is a cadence of 1-2.
- 1. The command "Right (Left) Step, MARCH" is given only when you are at a halt.
- 2. At the command "MARCH," move your right foot 12 inches to the right, then place your left foot smartly beside your right. Repeat this movement at quick time. Keep your legs straight, but not stiff. Hold your arms at your sides as in the position of attention.
- 2208. <u>BACK STEP</u>. The purpose of back step is to march the unit backwards for a short distance.
- 1. The command "Backward, MARCH" is given only when you are at a halt.

2. At the command "MARCH," step off to the rear with your left foot and take 15-inch steps at quick time. At the same time swing your arms 6 inches to the front and 3 inches to the rear.

#### 2209. TO FACE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) IN MARCHING

1. This is an important part of the following movements: column right (left), by the right (left) flank, close, take interval, and extend. For instructional purposes, the command is "By The Right (Left) Flank, MARCH."

#### 2. From a Halt, on the Command "MARCH"

- a. For right flank, turn 90 degrees to the right by pivoting on the ball of the right foot and (using a cross over step) stepping of with the left foot 30 inches in the new direction of march.
- b. For left flank, turn 90 degrees to the left by pivoting on the ball of the right foot and stepping off 30 inches with the left foot in the new direction of march.
- 3. While marching, the command of execution is given as the foot of the desired direction of movement strikes the deck.
- a. On "MARCH," without losing cadence, take one more step in the original direction.
- b. Pivot to the right (left) and step off in the new direction. If commanded and executed properly, the pivot will be on the foot away from the desired direction of movement, and the first step in the new direction will be with the other foot. The pivot and step are done together in one count. When marching to the flank the only other movement that can be given is a flanking movement in the opposite direction that will bring the individual or unit back to the original front.
- 2210. TO FACE TO THE REAR WHILE MARCHING. The purpose of this movement is to march the unit to the rear for a short distance.
- 1. The command is **"To the Rear, MARCH."** It may be executed when halted or while marching at either quick time or double time. When marching the command of execution **"MARCH"** is given when the right foot strikes the deck. When marching to the rear, the only movement that can be given is **"To the Rear, MARCH"** in order to bring the individual or unit back to its' original front.

## 2. To March to the Rear From a Halt

- a. The command is "To the Rear, MARCH."
- b. On "MARCH," step forward with the left foot.
- c. Turn about to the right on the balls of both feet and immediately step out to the rear with the left foot. This is done without loss of cadence. When turning, the feet should be about 15 inches apart.

## 3. When at Quick Time

- a. On the command "MARCH," take one more step.
- b. Turn about to the right on the balls of both feet and immediately step off to the rear with your left foot. This is done without loss of cadence. When turning, the feet should be about 15 inches apart.

## 4. When at Double Time

a. On "MARCH," follow the sequence of steps and actions below.

#### As this foot strikes the deck

## Take the following action

RIGHT	"MARCH" is given.
LEFT	36-inch step.
RIGHT	36-inch step. Then in place double time.
LEFT	Pivot 90 degrees to the right
RIGHT	Heels together.
LEFT	Pivot 90 degrees to the right.
RIGHT	Heels together.
LEFT	36-inch step in the new direction.

2211. TO MARCH TO THE FLANK. The purpose of this movement is to march the entire unit to the right (left) for a short distance. It may be executed when halted or while marching at either quick time or double time. The command is "By the Right (Left) Flank, MARCH." When marching the command of execution is given as the foot in the direction of the movement strikes the deck.

## 1. From a Halt

- a. For right flank, turn 90 degrees to the right by pivoting on the ball of the right foot and (using a cross over step) stepping off with the left foot 30 inches in the new direction of march.
- b. For left flank, turn 90 degrees to the left by pivoting on the ball of the right foot and stepping off 30 inches with the left foot in the new direction of march.

## 2. While at Quick Time

- a. On "MARCH," take one more step.
- b. Turn to the right (left) on the ball of the left (right) foot. At the same time, step off 30 inches in the new direction with the right (left) foot.

## 3. While Double Timing

a. On "MARCH," use the following sequence and actions.

By	the Left Flank	В	y the Right Flank
Step	Action	Step	Action
LEFT	"MARCH" is given.	RIGHT	"MARCH" is given.
RIGHT	36-inch step.	LEFT	36-inch step in
LEFT	in place double timing.		place double timing.
RIGHT	Pivot 90 degrees to the left.	LEFT	Pivot 90 degrees to the
LEFT	36-inch step in new direction.		right.
		RIGHT	36-inch step in new direction.

- 2212.  $\underline{\text{TO CHANGE STEP}}$ . The purpose of this movement is to change the cadence count without changing the rhythm of the cadence.
- 1. The command is "Change Step, MARCH." It may be given while marching at quick or double time, marking time, or double timing in place. The command of execution is given as the right foot strikes the deck.

## 2. While Marching at Quick Time or Double Time

- a. On "MARCH," take one more step, 30 or 36 inches, as appropriate.
- b. As your right foot comes forward to the next step, place the toe near the left heel and step out again with the left foot. This changes the cadence count, but not the rhythm.

## 3. While Marking Time

- a. On "MARCH," lift and lower the left foot twice in succession.
- b. The second time it touches the deck, raise the right foot and continue marking time.

## 4. While Double Timing in Place

- a. On "MARCH," hop twice on the left foot.
- b. Continue double timing in place.
- 2213. TO MARCH AT EASE. The purpose of this movement is to give troops a rest from marching at attention or when keeping in step becomes difficult due to rough terrain
- 1. The command is "At Ease, MARCH." It is given as either foot strikes the deck and only while marching at quick time.
- 2. After "MARCH," you are no longer required to march in cadence, but must keep interval and distance. Do not talk.

#### 2214. TO MARCH AT ROUTE STEP

- 1. The command is "Route Step, MARCH." It is commanded as either foot strikes the deck and only while marching at quick time.
- 2. After "MARCH," you are no longer required to march in cadence, but must keep interval and distance. You may talk, but in a low voice.

# 2215. TO RESUME MARCHING AT QUICK TIME FROM ROUTE STEP OR AT EASE

1. The command is "Squad (Platoon, Company, Detail, etc.), ATTENTION."

- 2. After commanding "ATTENTION," the unit leader will count cadence until all troops are in step. Pick up the step as soon as possible and continue marching at attention.
- 3. Commands that involve precision in execution will not be given until the command to resume marching at quick time has been given and all members of the formation have picked up the step and cadence.

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 3

# MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	3000	3-5
CECETON 1. MANUAL OF ADMC MITTIN A DADADE CLIN		
SECTION 1: MANUAL OF ARMS WITH A PARADE SLIN	J	
GENERAL	3100	3-7
ORDER ARMS	3101	3-9
REST POSITIONS	3102	3-10
TRAIL ARMS	3103	3-11
PORT ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS	3104	3-12
MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS	3105	3-13
RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS	3106	3-16
MOVEMENTS FROM RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS	3107	3-18
LEFT SHOULDER ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS	3108	3-21
MOVEMENTS FROM LEFT SHOULDER ARMS	3109	3-22
PRESENT ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS	3110	3-23
MOVEMENTS FROM PRESENT ARMS	3111	3-24
RIFLE SALUTE	3112	3-26
INSPECTION ARMS (WITH AND WITHOUT MAGAZINE)	3113	3-28
PORT ARMS FROM INSPECTION ARMS (WITH AND WITHOUT MAGAZINE) .	3114	3-30
FIX AND UNFIX BAYONETS	3115	3-31
AUTHORIZED MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE	3116	3-31
SECTION 2: MANUAL OF ARMS WITH A LOOSENED SLI	NG	
GENERAL	3200	3-33
SLING ARMS	3201	3-33

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
UNLSING ARMS	3202	3-35
ADJUST SLING	3203	3-35
SALUTING AT SLING ARMS	3204	3-36
PORT ARMS FROM SLING ARMS	3205	3-37
INSPECTION ARMS FROM SLING ARMS	3206	3-38
GEOGRAN 2. MANUAL OF ADMC MOVEMENTS MATERIAL THE MA	202	
SECTION 3: MANUAL OF ARMS MOVEMENTS WITH THE M2	203	
GENERAL	3300	3-41
PRESENT ARMS WITH THE M203	3301	3-42
INSPECTION ARMS WITH THE M203	3302	3-42
FIGURE		
3-1 DRILL NOMENCLATURE OF THE U.S. RIFLE, 5.56MM, M16		3-8
3-2 ORDER ARMS		3-9
3-3 PARADE REST		3-10
3-4 TRAIL ARMS		3-11
3-5 MOVEMENTS FROM ORDER ARMS TO PORT ARMS		3-12
3-6 MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS TO ORDER ARMS		3-13
3-7 MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS TO LEFT SHOULDER ARMS		3-14
3-8 MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS TO RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS		3-15
3-9 MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS TO PRESENT ARMS		3-16
3-10 MOVEMENTS FROM ORDER ARMS TO RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS		3-17
3-11 MOVEMENTS FROM RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS TO PORT ARMS		3-19
3-12 RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS TO ORDER ARMS		3-20
3-13 MOVEMENTS FROM ORDER ARMS TO LEFT SHOULDER ARMS		3-21
3-14 MOVEMENTS FROM LEFT SHOULDER ARMS TO PORT ARMS		3-23
3-15 MOVEMENTS FROM ORDER ARMS TO PRESENT ARMS		3-24

		PAGE
3-16	MOVEMENTS FROM PRESENT ARMS TO ORDER ARMS	3-25
3-17	RIFLE SALUTES	3-27
3-18	INSPECTION ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS	3-29
3-19	CRADLE RIFLE INSIDE RIGHT ELBOW	3-34
3-20	POSITION OF SLING ARMS	3-34
3-21	SALUTE AT SLING ARMS	3-36
3-22	PORT ARMS FROM SLING ARMS	3-37
3-23	INSPECTION ARMS FROM SLING ARMS	3-39
3-24	SLING ARMS WITH THE M203	3-41
3-25	INSPECTION ARMS WITH THE M203	3-42

PART I: DRILL

## CHAPTER 3

## MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

3000. <u>GENERAL</u>. This Chapter covers the manual of arms movements for the M16 rifle with both the parade and loosened sling, and the M16 with the M203 grenade launcher attached. Whenever executing any manual of arms movements ensure that the weapon has been cleared and that all weapons handling procedures are followed.

#### CHAPTER 3

## MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

#### SECTION 1: MANUAL OF ARMS WITH A PARADE SLING

## 3100. GENERAL

- 1. Prior to commencing the manual of arms, the magazine is removed, and the sling is drawn tight and positioned on the left (selector switch) side of the rifle. This configuration is called a parade sling and facilitates execution of the manual of arms. Figure 3-1 identifies the drill nomenclature for the M16 rifle with sling.
- 2. All movements of the manual of arms are executed smartly and with snap.
- 3. On the command " $\underline{FALL\ IN}$ ," if armed with a rifle it will be positioned at order arms.
- 4. Facings, alignments, and short distance marching movements are executed from order arms. Side step, back step, open and close ranks, and close and extend are short distance movements. Forward march may be given from order arms to march units forward for a short distance. When these movements are commanded while at order arms, it is necessary to come automatically to trail arms and step off simultaneously on the command of execution for the movement. The rifle is returned to order arms upon halting.
- 5. Before a command for any marching movement (other than the executions stated in paragraph 3100.3) is given to armed troops, they are faced in the direction of march and their weapons brought to right (left) shoulder, port, or sling arms by the appropriate command. After a marching movement has been completed and it is desired to execute a facing movement, the command to order or unsling arms is given, followed by the command for the facing movement.
- 6. When at a position other than sling arms, the troops must come to port arms for double time. When the troops are in formation, the commander gives the appropriate commands.
- 7. Generally, the M16 rifle should be carried at sling arms except for ceremonies and drill periods.

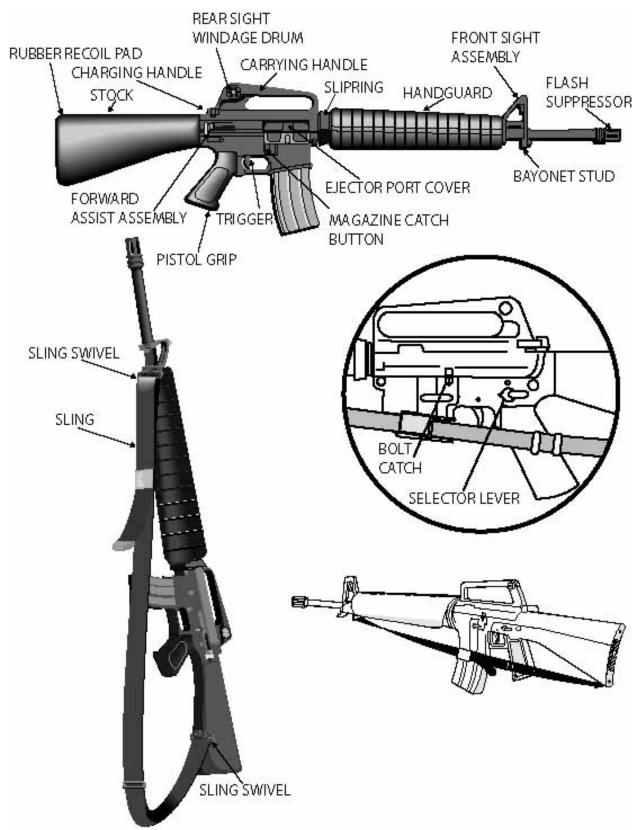


Figure 3-1.--Drill Nomenclature of the U.S. Rifle, 5.56mm, M16.

## 3101. ORDER ARMS

- 1. The basic position of the rifle manual is order arms. (See figure 3-2). It is the position assumed by an individual halted at attention with the rifle. It is assumed on the command "ATTENTION" from any of the rest positions except fall out. Order arms is also assumed on the command "FALL IN" and on the command "Order, ARMS," from any position in the manual except inspection arms and sling arms.
- 2. Properly executed, the butt of the rifle rests on the deck, and the stock rests along the outer edge of the right shoe. The pistol grip is to the front and the barrel is in a near vertical position. The rifle is grasped by the right hand at the junction of the front sight assembly and the barrel. The barrel rests in the "V" formed by the thumb and forefinger. The fingers are extended and joined and placed on line with the barrel. The thumb is placed along the trouser seam and the entire right arm is behind the rifle. This may cause a slight bend to the right arm of shorter individuals. Persons, too tall to reach the junction of the barrel and front sight assembly, may slide their hand up the barrel so that their posture remains erect.





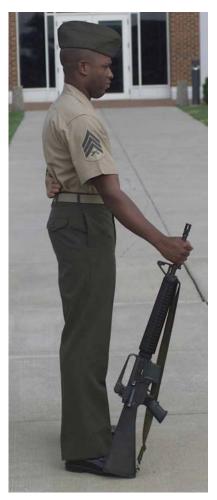


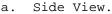
b. Right Side.

Figure 3-2.--Order Arms.

## 3102. REST POSITIONS

- 1. The purpose of rest positions with the rifle is the same as rest positions without arms. They are commanded and executed as without arms with the following exceptions and additions.
- 2. On the command "Parade, REST," the left foot is moved 12 inches to the left. The rifle butt is kept against the right foot. The grasp of the right hand is moved up the barrel to just below the flash suppresser with the fingers joined and curled with the forefinger touching the thumb. The right arm is straightened directly to the front so that the muzzle points forward and up. (See figure 3-3a.) At the same time the left foot is moved, the left hand is placed behind the back just below the belt line with fingers and thumb extended and joined and the palm facing the rear. (See figure 3-3b.)







b. Rear View.

Figure 3-3.--Parade Rest.

3. On the command "AT EASE" or "REST," the right foot remains in place and the rifle is held as in parade rest with the right arm relaxed slightly.

## 3103. TRAIL ARMS

- 1. The purpose of trail arms is to raise the rifle off the deck when facing, aligning or moving a short distance. It is executed in one count simultaneously with the first count of the movement commanded, and upon that movement's command of execution. It may be executed only when halted at order arms. The rifle is returned to order arms quietly and without command upon completion of the movements.
- 2. For training purposes, trail arms may be executed on command. The command is **"Trail, ARMS."** At the command of execution **"ARMS,"** the rifle is raised vertically 3 inches off the deck. The wrist is kept straight with the thumb along the seam of the trousers. (See figure 3-4.)
- 3. At the command "Order, ARMS," the rifle is quietly lowered to the position of order arms.







b. Right Side

Figure 3-4.--Trail Arms.

## 3104. PORT ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to bring the rifle to a two-handed carry position. This is a two-count movement from order arms. It is executed when halted at order arms. The command is "Port, ARMS."
- 2. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, slide the right hand up and grasp the barrel near the flash suppresser. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. Without loss of motion, raise and carry the rifle diagonally across the front of the body until the right hand is level with and slightly to the left of the face. The right wrist is on the outboard portion of the front sight assembly. The elbow is held down without strain and nearly touches the handguard. The barrel is up and bisecting the angle formed by the neck and left shoulder. The pistol grip is to the left. The butt is in front of the right hip. At the same time, smartly grasp the handguard with your left hand, just above the slipring. The sling is included in the grasp. The fingers are joined and grasping the rifle. The little finger is in line with the slipring with the thumb on the inboard side of the handguard. The left wrist and forearm are straight. The elbow is held in against the body. (See figure 3-5b.)
- 3. On the second count, release the grasp of the right hand and smartly re-grasp the small of the stock. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the small of the stock with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. The right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is held into the side and the upper arm is in line with the back. The rifle is about 4 inches from the body. (See figure 3-5c.)







Start.

b. Count One.

c. Count Two.

Figure 3-5.--Movements from Order Arms to Port Arms.

## 3105. MOVEMENTS FROM PORT ARMS

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to move the rifle from port arms to order arms, left shoulder arms, right shoulder arms and present arms.
- 2. Order arms is a three-count movement. It is executed only when halted at port arms. The command is "Order, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, the right hand is moved from the small of the stock and smartly re-grasps the barrel. The palm of the right hand is to the rear. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. The little finger is just above the bayonet stud. The right wrist is on the outboard portion of the front sight assembly. The elbow is held down without strain and nearly touches the handguard. (See figure 3-6b.)
- b. On the second count, lower the rifle initially with the left hand while changing the grasp of the right hand to the junction of the barrel and the front sight assembly as in the position of order arms. Without loss of motion, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and, with your right hand, carry the weapon to your right side until the butt is 3 inches from the deck. The barrel is in a vertical position and the pistol grip is to the front. At the same time guide the weapon with the left hand until the right thumb is on the trouser seam. The fingers of the left hand are extended and joined and touch the rifle near the flash suppresser. The palm of the left hand is toward the rear. The left wrist and forearm are straight and the left elbow is in against the body. (See figure 3-6c.)
- c. On the third count, return the left hand to the left side at the position of attention. At the same time, gently lower the rifle to the deck with the right hand. (See figure 3-6d.)







b. Count One.



c. Count Two.



d. Count Three.

Figure 3-6.--Movements from Port Arms to Order Arms.

- 3. Left shoulder arms from port arms is a two-count movement. It may be executed while halted at attention or while marching. The command is "Left Shoulder, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and, with the right hand, carry the rifle to the left side rotating it a quarter turn counterclockwise. Place it on the left shoulder. The elbow is held down without strain. At the same time, grasp the butt of the rifle with the left hand in the same manner as for right shoulder arms. (See figure 3-7b.)
- b. On the second count, move your right hand back to the right side at the position of attention. The rifle is held at a 60-degree angle from the deck. (See figure 3-7c.)







a. Start.

b. Count One.

c. Count Two.

Figure 3-7.--Movements from Port Arms to Left Shoulder Arms.

- 4. Right shoulder arms from port arms is a three-count movement. It may be executed while halted at attention or while marching. The command is "Right Shoulder, ARMS."
- a. On the command of execution, and for the count of one, move the right hand from the small of the stock and grasp the butt placing the heel of the butt between the first two fingers. The heel will be visible between the index and middle fingers. (See figure 3-8b.)

- b. On the second count, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and carry the rifle to the right side. The left hand remains in contact with the rifle in order to assist in the movement. At the same time, with the right hand, rotate the rifle a quarter turn counterclockwise and place the rifle into the right shoulder. Slide the left hand to the junction of the stock and receiver just below the charging handle. Guide the rifle into the shoulder with the left hand. The thumb and fingers are extended and joined with the palm turned toward the body. The first joint of the left forefinger touches the rear of the receiver. The left wrist and forearm are straight. The left elbow is held against the body. The grasp of the right hand is unchanged. The right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is held into the side with the upper arm in line with the back. (See figure 3-8c.)
- c. On the third count, move your left hand back to the left side at the position of attention. The rifle is held at a 60-degree angle from the deck. (See figure 3-8d.)

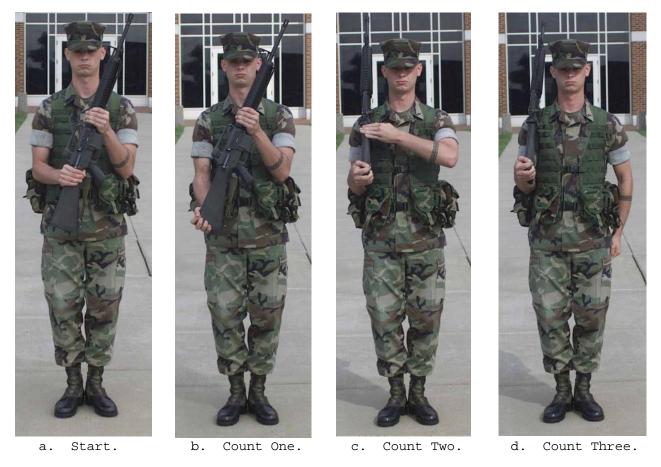


Figure 3-8.--Movements from Port Arms to Right Shoulder Arms.

5. Present arms from port arms is a one-count movement. It is only executed while halted at attention. The movement may be executed without command, for a sentry on post, or at the command of "Present, ARMS." To execute the movement the rifle is rotated clockwise with the right hand, the muzzle moves to the right, and the rifle is re-grasped above the slipring with the left hand. The sling is included in the grasp. (See figure 3-9.)







b. Present Arms.

Figure 3-9.--Movements from Port Arms to Present Arms.

# 3106. RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement it to bring the rifle to a position on the right shoulder. This is a four-count movement from order arms. It is executed when halted at order arms. The command is "Right Shoulder, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution, and for the count of one, grasp the barrel of the weapon with the right hand. Without loss of motion, raise and carry the rifle diagonally across the front of the body until the right hand is level with and slightly to the left of the face. The right wrist and forearm are straight. The right elbow is held down without strain. The barrel is up and bisecting the angle formed by the neck and left shoulder. At the same time, grasp the handguard with the left hand (as in count one for port arms). (See figure 3-10b.)

- 3. On the second count, release the barrel with the right hand and grasp the butt placing the heel of the butt between the first two fingers. The heel will be visible between the index and middle fingers. (See figure 3-10c.)
- 4. On the third count, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and carry the rifle to the right side. The left hand remains in contact with the rifle in order to assist in the movement. At the same time, with the right hand, rotate the rifle a quarter turn counterclockwise and place the rifle into the right shoulder. Slide the left hand to the junction of the stock and receiver just below the charging handle. Guide the rifle into the shoulder with the left hand. The thumb and fingers are extended and joined with the palm turned toward the body. The first joint of the left forefinger touches the rear of the receiver. The left wrist and forearm are straight. The left elbow is held against the body. The grasp of the right hand is unchanged. The right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is held into the side with the upper arm in line with the back. (See figure 3-10d.)
- 5. On the fourth count, move your left hand back to the left side at the position of attention. The rifle is held at a 60-degree angle from the deck. (See figure 3-10e.)







b. Count One.

Figure 3-10.--Movements from Order Arms to Right Shoulder Arms.







- c. Count Two.
- d. Count Three.
- e. Count Four.

Figure 3-10.--Movements from Order Arms to Right Shoulder Arms--Continued.

#### 3107. MOVEMENTS FROM RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to move the rifle from right shoulder arms to port arms, order arms, left shoulder arms or present arms.
- 2. Port arms from right shoulder arms is a two-count movement. It may be executed while halted at attention or when marching. The command is "Port, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, pull the rifle butt back quickly with the right hand so the rifle comes off the right shoulder. At the same time, with the right hand rotate the rifle a quarter turn clockwise so that the pistol grip is to the left. Allow the rifle to fall diagonally across the front of the body. Bring the left hand up and smartly grasp the handguard with the sling included in the grasp. The fingers are joined grasping the handguard. The little finger is in line with the slipring but not touching it. The thumb is on the inboard side. The left wrist and forearm are straight. The elbow is held in against the body. The barrel is up; bisecting the angle formed by your neck and left shoulder. The butt is in front of the right hip. The grasp of the right hand has not changed. The right arm is nearly extended with the elbow held against the body. (See figure 3-11b.)
- b. On the second count, release the grasp of the right hand from the butt and smartly re-grasp the small of the stock. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the small of the stock with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. The right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is held into the side and the upper arm is in line with the back. The rifle is about 4 inches from the body and now in the position of port arms. (See figure 3-11c.)







a. Start.

b. Count One.

c. Count Two.

Figure 3-11.--Movements from Right Shoulder Arms to Port Arms.

- 3. Order arms from right shoulder arms is a four-count movement. Order arms may be executed only when halted at attention. The command is "Order, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, pull the rifle butt back quickly with the right hand so the rifle comes off the right shoulder. At the same time, with the right hand rotate the rifle a quarter turn clockwise so that the pistol grip is to the left. Allow the rifle to fall diagonally across the front of the body. Bring the left hand up and smartly grasp the handguard with the sling included in the grasp. The fingers are joined grasping the handguard. The little finger is in line with the slipring but not touching it. The thumb is on the inboard side. The left wrist and forearm are straight. The elbow is held in against the body. The barrel is up bisecting the angle formed by your neck and left shoulder. The butt is in front of the right hip. The grasp of the right hand has not changed. The right arm is nearly extended with the elbow held against the body. (See figure 3-12b.)
- b. On the second count, release the grasp of the right hand from the butt and smartly re-grasp the barrel. The palm of the right hand is to the rear. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. The little finger is just above the bayonet stud and the right wrist in on the outboard portion of the front sight assembly. (See figure 3-12c.)
- c. On the third count, lower the rifle initially with the left hand while changing the grasp of the right hand to the junction of the barrel and the front sight assembly as in the position of order arms. Without loss of motion, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and with your right hand, carry the weapon to your right side until the butt is 3 inches from the deck. At the same time, guide the weapon with the left hand until the right thumb is on the trouser seam. The fingers of the left hand are extended and joined and touching the

rifle, near the flash suppresser. The palm of the left hand is toward the rear. The wrist and forearm are straight and the left elbow is in against the body. (See figure 3-12d.)

d. On the fourth count, return the left hand to the left side at the position of attention. At the same time, gently lower the rifle to the deck with the right hand. (See figure 3-12e.)







b. Count One.



c. Count Two.



d. Count Three.



e. Count Four.

Figure 3-12.--Right Shoulder Arms to Order Arms.

- 4. Left shoulder arms from right shoulder arms is a four-count movement. It may be executed while halted at attention or while marching. The command is "Left Shoulder, ARMS." The first two counts move the rifle to port arms as described in paragraph 3107.2. The second two counts carry the rifle into the left shoulder as described in paragraph 3105.3.
- 5. Present arms from right shoulder arms is a three-count movement. The first two counts move the weapon to port arms as described in paragraph 3107.2. For the third count rotate the weapon to present arms as described in paragraph 3105.5.

## 3108. LEFT SHOULDER ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement it to bring the rifle to a position on the left shoulder. This is a four-count movement from order arms. It is executed when halted at order arms. The command is "Left Shoulder, ARMS."
- 2. At the command "ARMS," the rifle is brought to port arms on the first two counts. (See figures 3-13b and c.)
- 3. On the third count, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and, with the right hand, carry the rifle to the left side rotating it a quarter turn counterclockwise. Place it on the left shoulder. The elbow is held down without strain. At the same time, grasp the butt of the rifle with the left hand in the same manner as for right shoulder arms. (See figure 3-13d.)
- 4. On the fourth count, move your right hand back to the right side at the position of attention. The rifle is held at a 60-degree angle from the deck. (See figure 3-13e.)







b. Count One.

Figure 3-13.--Movements from Order Arms to Left Shoulder Arms.

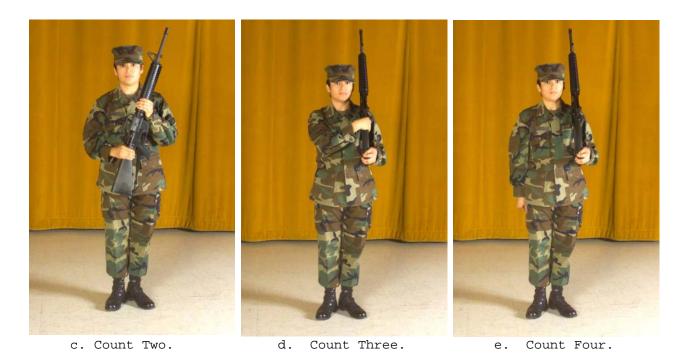


Figure 3-13.--Movements from Order Arms to Left Shoulder Arms--Continued.

#### 3109. MOVEMENTS FROM LEFT SHOULDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to move the rifle from left shoulder arms to port arms, order arms, right shoulder arms or present arms.
- 2. Port arms is a two-count movement. It is executed when halted or marching at left shoulder arms. The command is "Port, ARMS."
- a. On the command of execution, and for the count of one, the right hand is moved up across the body and grasps the rifle at the stock below the charging handle. (See figure 3-14b.)
- b. On the second count, the grasp of the left hand is released, and the rifle is brought from the shoulder diagonally across the body with the right hand and regrasped at the handguard just above the slipring with the left hand as in the position of port arms. (See figure 3-14c.)
- 3. Order arms from left shoulder arms is a five-count movement. Order arms may be executed only when halted at attention. The command is "Order, ARMS." For the first two counts, move the rifle to port arms as described in figures 13d and e. For the last three counts, the rifle is brought to order arms as described in figures 3-12c, d, and e.
- 4. Right shoulder arms from left shoulder arms is a five-count movement. The movement may be executed while halted at attention or while marching; the command is "Right Shoulder, ARMS." For the first two counts of the movement the rifle is moved to port arms. (See figure 3-14.) The next three counts move the rifle to right shoulder arms as described in paragraph 3105.4.







a. Start.

b. Count One.

c. Count Two.

Figure 3-14.--Movements from Left Shoulder Arms to Port Arms.

5. Present arms from left shoulder arms is a three-count movement. The movement may be executed only while halted at attention. The movement may be executed without command by a sentry on post or on the command "Present, ARMS." The first two counts bring the rifle to port arms described in paragraph 3109.2. For the third count rotate the weapon to present arms as described in paragraph 3105.5.

## 3110. PRESENT ARMS FROM ORDER ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to render a salute to persons or colors when in formation or when posted as a sentry. Order arms to present arms is a two-count movement and is executed when halted at order or port arms. The command is "Present, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, slide the right hand up and grasp the barrel near the flash suppresser. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel. Without loss of motion, raise and carry the rifle to a vertical position centered on the body. The pistol grip is to the front. The wrist is on the right side of the front sight assembly. The elbow is held down without strain. At the same time, smartly grasp the rifle at the handguard with the left hand just above the slipring. The sling is included in the grasp. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the handguard. The little finger is on line with the slipring with the thumb on the inboard side of the handguard. The left wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is held into the side with the upper arm on line with the back. (See figure 3-15b.)
- b. On the second count, release the grasp of the right hand and re-grasp the small of the stock. The charging handle rests on the thumb of the right hand. The fingers are extended and joined diagonally across the small of the stock. The right wrist and forearm remain straight. The elbow is slightly bent and held against the body. The left thumb is 4 inches from the body. (see figure 3-15c.)

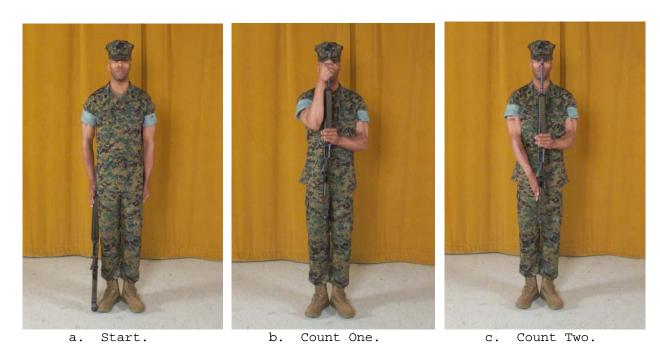


Figure 3-15.--Movements from Order Arms to Present Arms.

## 3111. MOVEMENTS FROM PRESENT ARMS

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to terminate present arms and to move the rifle from present arms to order arms, port arms, and left or right shoulder arms. These movements are only executed when halted at present arms.
- 2. Order arms from present arms is a three-count movement. The command is "Order, ARMS."
- a. At the command of execution, and for the count of one, release the grasp of the right hand from the small of the stock and re-grasp the barrel. The palm of the right hand is to the left. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel. The little finger is just above the bayonet stud. The wrist is on the right side of the front sight assembly. The elbow is held down without strain. (See figure 3-16b.)
- b. On the second count, lower the rifle initially with the left hand while changing the grasp of the right hand to the junction of the barrel and the front sight assembly as in the position of order arms. Without loss of motion, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and, with the right hand, carry the weapon to the right side until the butt is 3 inches from the deck. The barrel is in a vertical position and the pistol grip is to the front. At the same time, guide the weapon into the right side with the left hand. The fingers of the left hand are extended and joined with the thumb along the hand. The tips of the forefinger and middle finger are touching metal at a point near the flash suppresser. The palm is towards the rear. The left wrist and forearm are straight. Guide the weapon into the right side so that the thumb of the right hand will be on the trouser seam and push back on the barrel until the toe of the stock is on line with the toe of the right shoe. The entire right arm is behind the rifle. (See figure 3-16c.)

c. On the third count, quietly lower the rifle to the deck with the right hand so that the toe of the rifle is on line with the toe of the right shoe, and the barrel is in a near vertical position; at the same time smartly and in the most direct manner return the left hand to the side as in the position of attention. The thumb of the right hand remains along the trouser seam and the right arm remains behind the rifle. (See figure 3-16d.)



a. Start.



c. Count Two.



b. Count One.



d. Count Three.

Figure 3-16.--Movements from Present Arms to Order Arms.

- 3. When a member of a color guard or when posted as a sentry, port arms, left or right shoulder arms may be executed from present arms.
- a. Port arms is executed either without command or on the command of **"Port,** ARMS." It is executed in one count by rotating the rifle counterclockwise with the right hand as the grasp of the left hand is adjusted on the handguard to that of port arms.
- b. Left shoulder arms from present arms is a three-count movement. The movement is executed without command or on the command(s) of "Left Shoulder, ARMS;" "Carry, COLORS;" or "Shoulder, ARMS." The first count is to rotate the rifle to port arms as described in paragraph 3111.3a. The next two counts are to move the rifle from port arms to the left shoulder as described in paragraph 3105.3.
- c. Right shoulder arms from present arms is a four-count movement. The movement is executed without command or on the command(s) of "Right Shoulder, ARMS;" "Carry, COLORS;" or "Shoulder, ARMS." The first count is to rotate the rifle to port arms as described in paragraph 3111.3a. The next three counts are to move the rifle from port arms to the right shoulder as described in paragraph 3105.4.

#### 3112. RIFLE SALUTE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to render a salute to persons or colors when not in formation nor posted as a sentry. It is a one-count movement executed when halted at order arms, trail arms, or when halted or marching at right or left shoulder arms. The command is "Rifle, SALUTE" and to terminate the salute the command is "Ready, TWO."
- 2. When at order arms, the left arm moves smartly across the body with the forearm and wrist straight, fingers extended and joined and palm down. The first joint of the forefinger touches the flash suppresser. When not in ranks, the head turns toward the person or colors saluted. (See figure 3-17a.) On "Ready, TWO" resume the position of attention.
- 3. When at trail arms, the movements are identical with those for saluting at order arms, except that the rifle is held in the trail arms position. (See figure 3-17b.)
- 4. At right (left) shoulder arms, the left (right) arm moves across the body, fingers extended and joined, and palm down. The first joint of the forefinger touches the rear of the receiver just below the charging handle, and the forearm is held parallel to the deck. (See figures 3-17c and d.) When not in ranks, the head and eyes turn toward the person or colors saluted. On "Ready, TWO" the position of attention is resumed.



a. Rifle Salute from Order Arms.





c. Rifle Salute from Right Shoulder d. Rifle Salute from Left Shoulder Arms.



Figure 3-17.--Rifle Salutes.

### 3113. INSPECTION ARMS (WITH AND WITHOUT MAGAZINE)

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to inspect the rifle when in formation. Order arms to inspection arms is a seven-count movement and is executed when halted at order arms. The command is "Inspection, ARMS."
- a. The first two counts are the same as the two-count movement from order arms to port arms. (See figures 3-18b and c.)
- b. On the third count, release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and re-grasp the pistol grip. The fingers are joined and grasping the pistol grip. At the same time, lace the thumb of the left hand over the lower portion of the bolt catch. (See figure 3-18d.)
- c. On the fourth count, release the grasp of the right hand from the small of the stock and unlock the charging handle with the thumb and forefinger. The remaining three fingers are joined and placed on line with the forefinger just behind the charging handle. Sharply pull the charging handle to the rearmost position. At the same time, apply pressure to the bolt catch with the thumb of the left hand and lock the bolt to the rear. (See figure 3-18e.)
- d. On the fifth count, push the charging handle forward until it is locked in its foremost position and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. (See figure 3-18f.)
- e. On the sixth count, elevate the rifle up and to the left rotating the rifle counterclockwise so that the chamber is visible. The ejection port will be at eye level. The right forearm will touch the stock and the weapon will be at approximately a 45-degree angle. At the same time, turn the head to the left and inspect the chamber to see that it is clean. (See figure 3-18g.)
- f. On the seventh count, and after finding the chamber clear or clearing it, lower the rifle rotating it clockwise while turning the hand back to the front. Without loss of motion, release the grasp of the left hand from the pistol grip and re-grasp the handguard resuming the position of port arms. (See figure 3-18h.)
- 2. To execute inspection arms with the magazine in the weapon, remove the magazine with the left hand and place it between the clothing and the belt (left front) prior to count three.
- 3. Inspection arms may also be executed from right or left shoulder arms. For the first two counts the rifle is moved from the right (left) shoulder to port arms. The third through seventh counts then executed as described in paragraph 3113.1b through 3113.1f.



Figure 3-18.--Inspection Arms from Order Arms.





e. Count Six.

f. Count Seven.

Figure 3-18.--Inspection Arms from Order Arms--Continued.

### 3114. PORT ARMS FROM INSPECTION ARMS (WITH AND WITHOUT MAGAZINE)

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to terminate inspection arms (rifle bolt locked to the rear). This is a one-count movement, however there are four steps to be accomplished following the preparatory command. It is executed when halted at inspection arms. The command is "Port, ARMS." It is the only command that may be given from inspection arms.
- a. On the preparatory command of "Port," release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and re-grasp the weapon with the thumb and fingers, forming a "U" at the magazine well and trigger guard. Press the bolt catch and allow the bolt to go forward. With the fingertips, push upward and close the dust cover. Slide the left hand down and grasp the pistol grip. The fingers are joined and grasping the pistol grip. At the same time, place the thumb on the trigger so the tip of the thumb is outboard.
- b. On the command of execution "ARMS," pull the trigger with the thumb of the left hand. Then release the grasp of the left hand from the pistol grip and regrasp the lower portion of the handguard resuming the position of port arms.
- 2. If inspection arms is executed with the magazine, it is returned to the weapon immediately after pulling the trigger and before resuming port arms.

### 3115. FIX AND UNFIX BAYONETS

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to attach and remove the bayonet while in formation. They are not precision movements, therefore, there are no counts. They are executed when halted at order arms.
- 2. To attach the bayonet to the rifle the command is "Fix, BAYONETS."
- a. On the command of execution, move the muzzle of the rifle to the left front and grasp the barrel with the left hand while keeping the pistol grip and magazine well pointed forward. With the right hand, unsnap the securing strap and withdraw the bayonet. Turn the point skyward and attach the bayonet to the weapon. While engaging the bayonet stud, with the base of the bayonet, grasp the handle and apply downward pressure until a click is heard. Apply limited upward pressure to ensure that the bayonet is seated securely.
- b. Snap the scabbard, securing strap, and then resume the position of order arms.
- 3. To remove the bayonet from the rifle the command is "Unfix, BAYONETS."
- a. On the command of execution, move the muzzle to the left and grasp it with the left hand while keeping the pistol grip and magazine well pointed forward. With the right hand unsnap the securing strap. Release the bayonet from the bayonet stud and remove the bayonet from the muzzle. Keeping your eyes on the bayonet point, return it to the scabbard and insert it with the ring facing to the front.
  - b. Snap the scabbard securing strap and then resume order arms.

### 3116. AUTHORIZED MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

1. All of the following movements may be executed while halted. Those marked by an asterisk (\*) may be executed while halted or marching forward at quick time.

# 2. From Order Arms to

- a. Port Arms
- b. Right Shoulder Arms
- c. Left Shoulder Arms
- d. Present Arms
- e. Inspection Arms
- f. Trail Arms
- g. Rifle Salute
- h. Rest Positions
- i. Fix Bayonets
- j. Sling Arms

# 3. From Port Arms to

- a. Right Shoulder Arms \*
- b. Left Shoulder Arms \*
- c. Order Arms
- d. Present Arms

# 4. From Right Shoulder Arms to

- a. Left Shoulder Arms \*
- b. Port Arms \*
- c. Order Arms
- d. Present Arms
- e. Inspection Arms

# 5. From Left Shoulder Arms to

- a. Right Shoulder Arms \*
- b. Port Arms \*
- c. Order Arms
- d. Present Arms
- e. Inspection Arms

# 6. From Present Arms to

- a. Order Arms
- b. Port, Left or Right Shoulder Arms (When a member of a color guard, or when posted as a sentry)
- 7. From Inspection Arms to Port Arms only.

#### CHAPTER 3

#### MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

#### SECTION 2: MANUAL OF ARMS WITH A LOOSENED SLING

# 3200. GENERAL

- 1. This Section contains the procedures for executing manual of arms movements with the sling loosened so that the rifle may be carried slung from the shoulder. This is known as the sling arms position.
- 2. All individual or unit drill movements may be executed while at sling arms, except stack arms and unfix and fix bayonets.
- 3. Remain at sling arms during all rest movements.
- 4. Stack arms and fix and unfix bayonets (slings loose) are executed from unsling arms (order arms) only.
- 5. When in formation at sling arms, execute the hand salute on the command "Present, ARMS."

# 3201. SLING ARMS

#### 1. From Order Arms

- a. The purpose of this movement is to change from a parade sling to a loosened sling and to then sling the rifle onto the right shoulder. This is not a precision movement; therefore, there are no counts. From the order arms position (with a parade sling) the command for sling arms is "Sling, ARMS."
- b. On the command of execution, slide the right hand up and grasp the barrel near the flash suppresser. Without loss of motion, raise the rifle vertically to a diagonal position where the butt is in front of the right hip with the muzzle pointing up and the pistol grip to the left. At the same time, grasp the rifle at the handguard just above the slipring with the left hand. The sling is included in the grasp. The fingers are joined. Place the butt on the right hip. Release the grasp of the right hand and with the left hand move the rifle so that it will rest on the inside of the right elbow and cradle it there. (See figure 3-19.) The muzzle points slightly to the right. Release the grasp of the left hand from the handguard and with both hands loosen the sling. After the sling has been loosened, grasp the sling with your left hand and sling the rifle on the right shoulder in the most direct manner. Re-grasp the sling with the right hand. With the exception of the right arm, return to the position of attention. The palm of the right hand is toward the sling. The fingers are joined. The fingers and thumb are wrapped around the sling with the knuckles forward. The wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is holding the rifle in a vertical position and against the body. (See figure 3-20.)



Figure 3-19.--Cradle Rifle Inside Right Elbow.



Figure 3-20.--Position of Sling Arms.

### 2. From Unsling Arms

- a. The purpose of this movement is to sling the rifle on the right shoulder when the sling has already been loosened. This is not a precision movement; therefore, there are no counts. From the unsling arms position (order arms with loosened sling), the command for sling arms is "Sling, ARMS."
- b. On the command of execution, slide the right hand up and grasp the barrel near the flash suppresser. The fingers are joined and wrapped around the barrel with the thumb wrapped around the inboard portion. Without loss of motion, raise the rifle and grasp the sling with the left hand near the upper sling swivel. Release the grasp of the right hand and, with the left hand, sling the rifle over the right shoulder in the most convenient manner. Re-grasp the sling with the right hand. With the exception of the right arm, return to the position of attention. The palm of the right hand is toward the sling. The fingers are joined. The fingers and thumb of the right hand are wrapped around the sling with the knuckles forward. The wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The elbow is holding the rifle in a vertical position and against the body.

#### 3202. UNSLING ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to take the slung rifle off of the shoulder and move it to the order arms position. This is not a precision movement; therefore, there are no counts. It is executed when halted at sling arms. The command is "Unsling, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution, grasp the sling with the left hand in front of the armpit and unsling the rifle from the right shoulder in the most convenient manner. Grasp the rifle at the junction of the barrel and the front sight assembly. Release the grasp of the left hand from the sling and, with the right hand, carry the weapon to the right side until the butt is 3 inches from the deck. The barrel is in a vertical position. At the same time, guide the weapon with the left hand until the right thumb is on the trouser seam. The fingers of the left hand are extended and joined and touching the rifle, near the flash suppresser. The palm of the left hand is toward the rear. The left wrist and forearm are straight and the left elbow is in against the body. Quietly lower the rifle to the deck with the right hand and at the same time return the left hand to the left side at the position of attention.

### 3203. ADJUST SLINGS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to change a loosened sling to parade sling. This is not a precision movement; therefore, there are no counts. The command is "Adjust, SLINGS."
- 2. From unsling arms (order arms); on the command of execution, the rifle is brought to a cradle position inside the right elbow as in the movement from order arms to sling arms. While in this position, the sling is tightened to parade sling. The rifle is then returned to order arms.
- 3. From sling arms, on the command of execution, grasp the sling with the left hand in front of the armpit and unsling the rifle from the right shoulder in the most convenient manner. Then place the butt on the right hip and cradle the rifle inside the right elbow. Tighten the sling to the parade sling position and automatically assume the position of order arms.

# 3204. SALUTING AT SLING ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to render a salute while at sling arms. It is a two-count movement and is executed when halted at sling arms. The command is "Present, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution and for the count of one, reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sling just above the right hand. On the second count, release the right hand and execute the hand salute. (See figure 3-21.)
- 3. To resume order arms, the command is "Order, ARMS." On the command of execution lower the right hand smartly to the right side and re-grasp the sling at the original position. After grasping the sling with the right hand, release the sling with the left hand and return it smartly to the position of attention.





a. Count One.

b. Count Two.

Figure 3-21.--Salute at Sling Arms.

# 3205. PORT ARMS FROM SLING ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is take the rifle off of the shoulder and move it to the position of port arms. This is not a precision movement; therefore there are no counts. It is executed when halted at the position of sling arms. The command is "Port, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution, reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sling at the shoulder. Lift the weapon (by the sling), swing it to the front of the body, and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. Release the sling and re-grasp the weapon just forward of the slipring with the left hand. Keep the elbows into the side with the right forearm horizontal. (See figure 3-22.)





a. Start.



b. Grasping the Sling.

Figure 3-22.--Port Arms from Sling Arms.





c. Weapon off Shoulder.

d. Port Arms.

Figure 3-22.--Port Arms from Sling Arms--Continued.

3. To resume sling arms, the command is **"Sling, ARMS."** On the command of execution, grasp the sling near the upper-sling swivel with the left hand. Release the right hand and swing the weapon back onto the shoulder by inserting the right arm through the sling, immediately resuming the position of sling arms.

### 3206. INSPECTION ARMS FROM SLING ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to inspect the rifle when at sling arms. This is not a precision movement; therefore there are no counts. It is executed when halted at sling arms. The command is "Inspection, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution, move the left arm across the body and grasp the rifle by the pistol grip and place the thumb on the lower part of the bolt catch. (See figure 3-23b.) Release the grasp on the sling and, with the left hand and arm supporting the weapon, bring the rifle to a position diagonally across the body, placing the right hand at the small of the stock. (See figure 3-23c.) Unlock the charging handle with the thumb and pull it to the rear. (See figure 3-23d.) Push the charging handle until it is locked in its foremost position and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. Elevate the rifle up and to the left, at the same time rotating it 90 degrees so that the handgrip is pointing away from the body. At this time, visually inspect the chamber to see that it is clear. (See figure 3-23e.) Return to port arms. (See figure 3-23f.)







Start.

To the Pistol Grip. c. Diagonal Across Body.







d. Charging Handle. e. Inspecting Chamber.

f. Port Arms.

Figure 3-23.--Inspection Arms from Sling Arms.

### CHAPTER 3

#### MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE M16 RIFLE

### SECTION 3: MANUAL OF ARMS MOVEMENTS WITH THE M203

### 3300. GENERAL

- 1. This Section contains the procedures for executing manual of arms movements with the M203 Grenade Launcher.
- 2. When it is necessary to conduct a drill or ceremony involving troops armed with the M203, they will carry the weapon at sling arms. (See figure 3-24.)
- 3. The M203 will always be rigged with a loosened sling.
- 4. Troops armed with the M203 will fall in at sling arms and execute all individual drill movements from that position. The only manual of arms movements they will execute are present arms (hand salute) and inspection arms.
- 5. If stack arms is to be given, troops armed with the M203 will be positioned in ranks so that their weapons are treated as extras on the stacks.







b. Right Side.

Figure 3-24.--Sling Arms with the M203.

# 3301. PRESENT ARMS WITH THE M203

- 1. When armed with the M203, present arms will be executed in the same manner as the salute while at sling arms with the M16. (See figure 3-21.)
- 2. Sling arms will be resumed when order arms is given.

#### INSPECTION ARMS WITH THE M203 3302.

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to inspect the M203 while in formation. This is not a precision movement; therefore, there are no counts. It is executed when halted at sling arms. The command is "Inspection, ARMS."
- a. On the command of execution, the initial movements are the same as inspection arms from sling arms with the M16. (See figure 3-23.)
- b. When at the inspection arms position for the M16, continue with the M203 by pressing the barrel latch and sliding the barrel up to the barrel stop. Elevate the M203 again, turning the head and eyes, visually inspect the chamber of the barrel. Return to a modified port arms position with the left hand holding the barrel at its full forward position. (See figure 3-25.)



a. Grip.



Grasp Pistol b. Grasp Small of Stock.



c. Pull Charging Handle.



d. Re-grasp Stock.



e. Inspect Chamber.

Figure 3-25.--Inspection Arms with the M203.











f. Grasp Barrel g. Open 203 Release.

Barrel.

h. Left Hand to Port.

i. Inspecting M203 Barrel.

j. Final Position.

Figure 3-25.--Inspection Arms with the M203--Continued.

- 2. The command to return to the sling arms position from inspection arms is "Port, ARMS."
- a. On the preparatory command "Port," slide the barrel down to its closed and latched position. Then continue to close the bolt and dust cover and slide the left hand down to grasp the pistol grip and place the thumb on the rifle trigger as with the M16.
- b. On the command of execution "ARMS," pull the rifle trigger with the thumb of the left hand and then move it to the trigger of the grenade launcher and pull that trigger. Return to sling arms.

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 4

# MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE HANDGUN

		PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL .		4000	4-3
PRESENT A	RMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER	4001	4-4
ORDER ARM	S FROM PRESENT ARMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER	4002	4-4
INSPECTIO	N ARMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER	4003	4-4
PORT ARMS	FROM INSPECTION ARMS (PISTOL RETURNED TO HOLSTER) .	4004	4-9
	FIGURE		
4-1	M9 SERVICE PISTOL		4-3
4-2	POSITION OF ATTENTION ARMED WITH PISTOL		4-4
4-3	PISTOL REMOVED FROM THE HOLSTER TO ITS VERTICAL POSITION		4-5
4-4	PISTOL ROTATED WHILE REMOVING THE MAGAZINE (RIGHT HANDED)		4-6
4-5	PISTOL ROTATED WHILE REMOVING THE MAGAZINE (LEFT HANDED)		4-6
4-6	SLIDE TO REAR (RIGHT HANDED)		4-7
4-7	SLIDE TO REAR (LEFT HANDED)		4-8
4-8	POSITION OF INSPECTION ARMS (RIGHT HANDED)		4-8
4-9	POSITION OF INSPECTION ARMS (LEFT HANDED)		4-9

#### PART I: DRILL

#### CHAPTER 4

### MANUAL OF ARMS WITH THE HANDGUN

# 4000. GENERAL

- 1. The manual of arms with the handgun is executed with the M9 service pistol. When executing the manual the pistol will be in condition 4 except when executing "Port, ARMS" from "Inspection, ARMS." Figure 4-1 shows the nomenclature of the M9 pistol.
- 2. When in ranks and armed with the pistol, all movements with the exception of inspection arms are executed as if unarmed. The manual of arms for the pistol will be executed with the lanyard attached.
- 3. The manual of arms for the pistol is not executed in cadence. It is a simple, quick, and safe method of handling the weapon.
- 4. The manual of arms with the pistol may be executed with the weapon holstered on either the right or left side.
- 5. When in formation, remain at attention during all rifle manual movements except those listed below.

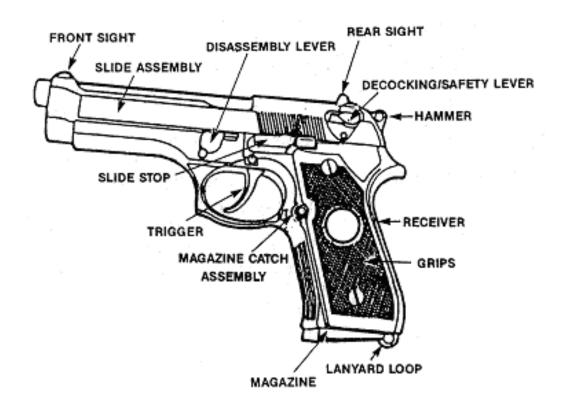


Figure 4-1.--M9 Service Pistol.

# 4001. PRESENT ARMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER

- 1. The command is "Present, ARMS." It is executed in one count.
- 2. On the command of execution, "ARMS," execute the hand salute.

### 4002. ORDER ARMS FROM PRESENT ARMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER

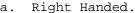
- 1. The command is "Order, ARMS." it is executed in one count.
- 2. On the command of execution, "ARMS," smartly return the right hand to its normal position on the right side.

### 4003. INSPECTION ARMS WITH PISTOL IN HOLSTER

1. The command is "Inspection, ARMS." It involves several movements THAT are executed rapidly and smartly without count. It may be executed only when halted at attention with pistol in holster. (See figure 4-2.) Inspection arms is not executed with the pistol as part of the rifle manual except when the unit is formed and dismissed.

NOTE: If holstered on the left side, the opposite hands are used from those described below.







B. Left Handed.

Figure 4-2.--Position of Attention Armed with Pistol.

2. On "ARMS," with the right (left) thumb, unfasten the holster flap, grasp the grip and pull the pistol from the holster. Raise the right (left) hand to a position level with and approximately 6 inches in front of the right (left) shoulder. Disconnect the lanyard. The grip should be held between the thumb and last three fingers, forefinger extended and positioned alongside the trigger guard. The muzzle points forward and up at an angle of 30 degrees. (See figure 4-3.)



a. Right Handed.



b. Left Handed.

Figure 4-3.--Pistol Removed from the Holster to its Vertical Position.

### 3. Magazine Removal

- a. Right Handed. Without lowering the muzzle or the right hand, turn the pistol handle to the left, look at the pistol, press the magazine catch with the right thumb and remove the magazine with the left hand. (See figure 4-4.) Turn the handle back to the right so that the bottom of the magazine well is to the front. Place the magazine at the left front hip between the pistol belt and outer garment with the magazine follower facing down.
- b. <u>Left Handed</u>. Without lowering the muzzle or the left hand, turn the pistol handle to the right, look at the pistol, press the magazine catch with the left forefinger and remove the magazine with the right hand. (See figure 4-5.) Turn the handle back to the left so that the bottom of the magazine well is to the front. Place the magazine at the right front hip between the pistol belt and outer garment with the magazine follower facing down.





Figure 4-4.--Pistol Rotated while Removing the Magazine (Right Handed).





Figure 4-5.--Pistol Rotated while Removing the Magazine (Left Handed).

# 4. Engaging the Slide Catch/Inspecting the Chamber

a. Right Handed. Without lowering the muzzle or the right hand, grasp the slide with the thumb and fingers of the left hand, thumb on the left side of the slide and pointing downward. Keep the left forearm parallel with the deck. Pull the slide all the way to the rear and engage the slide stop in its notch with the right thumb. (See figure 4-6.) Inspect the chamber to ensure a fully unloaded weapon. Smartly return the left hand to the left side assuming the position of attention. (See figure 4-8.)



Figure 4-6.--Slide to Rear (Right Handed).

b. <u>Left Handed</u>. Without lowering the muzzle or the left hand, grasp the slide with the thumb and fingers of the right hand, thumb on the right side of the slide and pointing downward. Keep the right forearm parallel with the deck. Pull the slide all the way to the rear and engage the slide stop in its notch with the right finger. (See figure 4-7.) Inspect the chamber to ensure a fully unloaded weapon. Smartly return the right hand to the right side assuming the position of attention. (See figure 4-9.)



Figure 4-7.--Slide to Rear (Left Handed).





Figure 4-8.--Position of Inspection Arms (Right Handed).



Figure 4-9.--Position of Inspection Arms (Left Handed).

### 4004. PORT ARMS FROM INSPECTION ARMS (PISTOL RETURNED TO HOLSTER)

- 1. The command is "Port, ARMS" and "Order, ARMS." It is the only command that may be executed from inspection arms. If the pistol is holstered on the left side, the opposite hands are used from those described below.
- a. On the command **"Port,"** with the thumb of the right (left) hand release the slide stop. With the muzzle pointing at a 30-degree angle, on the command **"ARMS,"** squeeze the trigger.
- NOTE: If the weapon is on safe (condition 3), move the selector switch to fire (condition 1).
- b. On the preparatory command "Order," remove the magazine from the pistol belt and insert it back into the magazine well. Re-attach the lanyard to the lanyard ring.
- c. On the command "ARMS," return the pistol to the holster and fasten the flap with the right (left) thumb.
- d. If the command " $\underline{\text{DISMISSED}}$ " is given, pistols will be holstered prior to exiting ranks.

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 5

# SWORD MANUAL

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	5000	5-3
DRAW SWORD	5001	5-8
PRESENT SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD	5002	5-11
ORDER SWORD FROM PRESENT SWORD	5003	5-13
CARRY SWORD FROM ORDER SWORD OR PRESENT SWORD	5004	5-14
EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD	5005	5-15
PARADE REST FROM ORDER SWORD	5006	5-17
AT EASE FROM ANY POSITION OF THE SWORD	5007	5-18
REST FROM ANY POSITION OF THE SWORD	5008	5-18
TO RETURN TO ATTENTION	5009	5-19
RETURN SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD	5010	5-19
FUNERAL CARRY	5011	5-22
SWORD MOURNING KNOT	5012	5-23
CARRY OF THE SWORD AND SCABBARD UNRIGGED	5013	5-24
MARCHING AT DOUBLE TIME WHEN ARMED WITH THE SWORD	5014	5-24
PUBLISH THE ORDER	5015	5-25
FORMING AN ARCH OF SWORDS FOR WEDDINGS	5016	5-26
PASSING AN UNSHEATHED SWORD	5017	5-28
FIGURE		
5-1 MARINE OFFICER'S SWORD		5-4
5-2 NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICER'S SWORD		5-6
5-3 MOVEMENTS TO DRAW SWORD FOR OFFICERS		5-9
5-4 MOVEMENTS TO DRAW SWORD FOR NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS.		5-10

		PAGE
5-5	MOVEMENTS FOR PRESENT SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; OFFICERS	5-11
5-6	MOVEMENTS FOR PRESENT SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS	5-12
5-7	ORDER SWORD FROM PRESENT SWORD; OFFICERS	5-13
5-8	ORDER SWORD FROM PRESENT SWORD; NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS	5-14
5-9	EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; OFFICERS	5-15
5-10	EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS	5-15
5-11	PARADE REST FROM ORDER SWORD; OFFICERS	5-17
5-12	PARADE REST FROM ORDER SWORD; NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS	5-17
5-13	AT EASE	5-18
5-14	MOVEMENTS FOR RETURN SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; OFFICERS	5-19
5-15	MOVEMENTS FOR RETURN SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD; NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS	5-21
5-16	FUNERAL CARRY	5-22
5-17	THE SWORD MOURNING KNOT	5-23
5-18	UNRIGGED CARRY	5-24
5-19	DOUBLE TIME ARMED WITH A SWORD	5-25
5-20	PUBLISH THE ORDER	5-26
5-21	FORMATION FOR THE ARCH OF SWORDS	5-27
5-23	PASSING AN UNSHEATHED SWORD	5-28

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 5

SWORD MANUAL

# 5000. GENERAL

- 1. Authorization for use of the sword.
- a. The Marine officers (Mameluke) sword is authorized for use by all Marine commissioned and warrant officers at parades, reviews, and other ceremonies.
- b. The Marine noncommissioned officer's sword is authorized for use by all enlisted Marines in the grade of corporal through sergeant major for parades, reviews, and other ceremonies. Marines in the grade of lance corporal through private may be trained in the use of the sword for motivational purposes. However, the use of the noncommissioned officer sword by Marines in the grade of lance corporal and below for parades, reviews or other ceremonies is expressly forbidden.
- c. Color guards mounted on horseback may be armed with the noncommissioned officer sword in lieu of rifles or pistols. All members of the color guard need to be a noncommissioned officer and/or staff noncommissioned officer. No other color guards will be armed with swords.
- d. Officers, staff noncommissioned officers and noncommissioned officers may be armed with the appropriate sword while filling duty assignments when the commander deems it appropriate to have Marines armed with the sword as a symbol of leadership or authority.
- e. A Marine is considered under arms when armed with the sword when the sword is rigged even when not in a duty status. This is because a sword is a ceremonial weapon.
- f. The wearing of swords during ceremonies while in the utility uniform is not authorized. Marine Corps uniform regulations prescribe the appropriate uniforms for wear when armed with a sword. However, for instructional purposes, unit leaders may authorize the wear of swords while in the utility uniform during rehearsals and when conducting unit training in sword manual. This provision also applies to sword manual training at all professional military education schools.
- 2. Drill movements with the sword are made with a fluid, deliberate motion. Trying to "snap" or "whip" the sword will usually result in the execution of the movement seeming to be awkward or ragged. Officers and noncommissioned officers execute the sword manual in the same manner with the following exceptions:
- a. The officer's scabbard is rotated to draw or return sword. The Marine officer's scabbard is worn with the convex edge to the rear (see figure 5-1), except when rotated 180-degrees to draw or return sword.
- b. The noncommissioned officer's scabbard is attached to a frog that prevents it from rotating. It is worn with the convex edge to the front and remains in that position during draw and return sword. (See figure 5-2.)

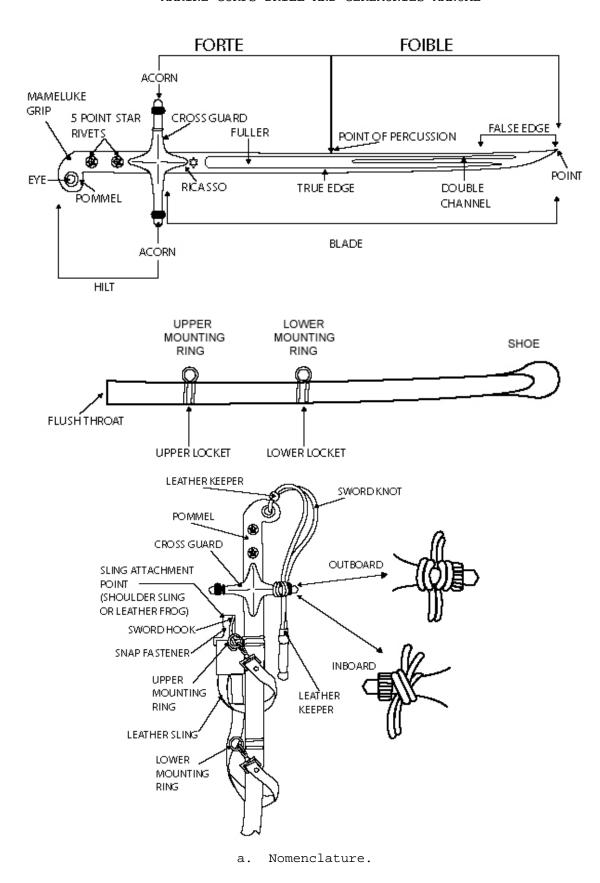


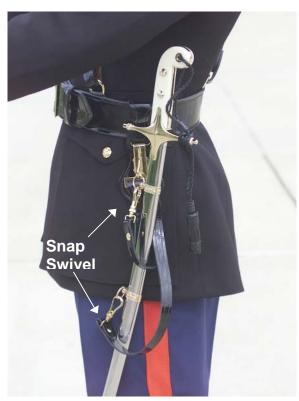
Figure 5-1.--Marine Officer's Sword.



b. Front.

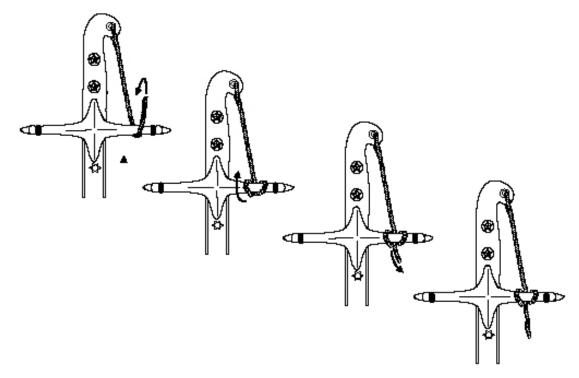


c. Left Side.



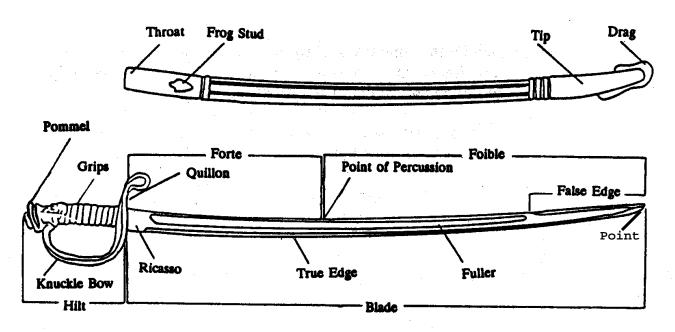
d. Properly Worn.

Figure 5-1.--Marine Officer's Sword--Continued.



e. Sword Knot.

Figure 5-1.--Marine Officer's Sword--Continued.



a. Nomenclature.

Figure 5-2.--Noncommissioned Officer's Sword.







c. Left Side.

Figure 5-2.--Noncommissioned Officer's Sword--Continued.

3. Officers and noncommissioned officers draw and return sword, without command, when the commander of their unit does. Unless members of the commander's staff, they execute all other movements of the sword manual on the commander's command to the unit. Staff members execute all other movements on the commander's separate command to his staff. The sword will be drawn with armed troops, except when at ease, rest, route step, at ease march, or when inspecting troops. A unit commander, after being inspected, will return sword prior to accompanying the inspecting party, except during the inspection of an honor guard.

# 4. Carry Sword is Assumed When

- a. Giving commands.
- b. Changing position in formation at quick time.

- c. Addressing or being addressed by a senior (except when saluting).
- d. The preparatory command for any quick time marching movement has been given.
  - e. Marching at quick time.
- f. Company officers and noncommissioned officers go to carry sword when any manual of arms movement has been ordered except parade rest, at ease, rest, present arms, or eyes right (left)(organization staffs excluded).
- g. In formation with personnel to your front at normal distance or less (organization staffs excluded), remain at carry sword except during rest or at ease.
- h. Commander's staff, to include the staffs of subordinate commanders at regimental/group or larger size units, go to carry sword only when changing position, marching at quick time (e.g., boxing the staff) or on the order of the commander to carry sword prior to marching in review.

### 5. Present Sword is Assumed When

- a. Saluting with the sword.
- b. The unit is presented to the colors or any person, or when the "National Anthem," "To the Colors," "Retreat," "Hail to the Chief," memorial "Taps" or other musical honors to flag and general officers is played.
- c. Executing eyes right (left) while marching past a reviewing officer or stand. If in the interior or rear of a formation, remain at carry sword.
- 6. Marching with sword at the carry, both arms should swing 6 inches to the front and 3 inches to the rear. Do not hold the scabbard or sling. The exception to this is during eyes right (left) while on the march the right arm is held straight at the side and the sword is kept from moving.
- 7. Not in formation, keep the sword in its scabbard. Salute by executing the hand salute.

#### 5001. DRAW SWORD

- 1. The command is "Draw, SWORD."
- 2. On the Preparatory Command "Draw"
- a. Officers. Grip the scabbard below the upper brass mounting ring with the left hand. Turn it clockwise 180 degrees. Tilt it forward to form an angle of 45 degrees with the deck. At the same time, reach across the body and grasp the sword grip with the right hand; draw the sword approximately 6 inches from the scabbard until the right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The left hand holds the scabbard against the side. (See figures 5-3a and b.)







b. Side View on "Draw."



c. Front View of First Step of Execution.



d. Side View of First Step of Execution.



e. Front View of Position of Carry Sword.



f. Side View of Carry Sword.

Figure 5-3.--Movements to Draw Sword for Officers.

b. <u>Noncommissioned Officers</u>. Grip the scabbard just below the frog with the left hand. Tilt it forward to form an angle of 45 degrees with the deck. At the same time, reach across the front of the body and grasp the sword grip with the right hand; draw the sword about 10 inches from the scabbard until the right wrist and forearm are straight and parallel to the deck. The left hand holds the scabbard against the side. (See figures 5-4a and b.)



a. Front View on "Draw."



b. Side View on "Draw."



E. Front View of First Step of Execution.



d. Side View of First Step of Execution.



e. Front View of Position of Carry Sword.



f. Side View of Position of Carry Sword.

Figure 5-4.--Movements to Draw Sword for Noncommissioned Officers.

### 3. On The Command of Execution "SWORD"

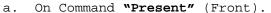
- a. Draw the sword smartly, raising the right arm to its full extent, directly to the front at an angle of about 45 degrees, the sword in a straight line with the arm, true edge down; drop the left hand to the side. (Officers see figures 5-3c and d; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-4c and d.)
  - b. Pause for one count.

c. Bring the false edge of the blade against the shoulder seam, blade vertical, back of the grip to the rear, and the arm nearly extended. The right thumb and forefinger embrace the lower part of the grip, with the thumb against the trouser seam, and the remaining fingers joined in a natural curl behind the end of the hilt as if holding a pen or pencil. This is the position of carry sword. (Officers see figures 5-3e and f; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-4e and f.)

### 5002. PRESENT SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD

- 1. The command is "Present, SWORD (ARMS)." It may be given only when halted at order sword or carry sword. It is executed in two counts.
- 2. On **"Present,"** raise the right hand to the level of and 6 inches in front of the neck. Keep the thumb on the left side of the grip, wrist slightly bent, and inner forearm against the body. The blade should incline forward at a 30-degree angle from vertical. (Officers see figures 5-5a and b; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-6a and b.)
- 3. On "SWORD (ARMS)," bring the point down smartly, without whipping, to a position 3 inches above the deck and slightly right of the right foot. Straighten the arm so the knuckle bow (noncommissioned officers) or the acorn (officers) is against the trouser seam. The blade is inclined down and to the front with the true edge to the left. The thumb remains on the left side of the grip. (Officers see figures 5-5c and d; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-6c and d.)
- 4. When at carry or order sword and it becomes necessary to salute without command, execute present sword. After the salute has been returned, go to order sword (then to carry sword if walking).







b. On Command "Present" (Side).

Figure 5-5.--Movements for Present Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Officers.







Figure 5-5.--Movements for Present Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Officers--Continued.

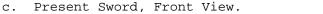


a. On Command "Present" (Front). b. On Command "Present" (Side).



Figure 5-6.--Movements for Present Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Noncommissioned Officers.







d. Present Sword, Side View.

Figure 5-6.--Movements for Present Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Noncommissioned Officers--Continued.

### 5003. ORDER SWORD FROM PRESENT SWORD

- 1. The command is "Order, SWORD (ARMS)." It is executed in one count.
- 2. On "SWORD (ARMS)," turn the true edge down. In this position, the right arm hangs naturally with the thumb along the trouser seam. The blade slants down to the front with the point 3 inches from the deck. (Officers see figure 5-7, noncommissioned officers see figure 5-8.)



a. Present Sword.



b. Order Sword, Front.



c. Order Sword, Side.

Figure 5-7.--Order Sword from Present Sword; Officers.







a. Present Sword.

b. Order Sword, Front.

c. Order Sword, Side.

Figure 5-8.--Order Sword from Present Sword; Noncommissioned Officers.

#### 5004. CARRY SWORD FROM ORDER SWORD OR PRESENT SWORD

- 1. The command is "Carry, SWORD" it may be given only when halted at order sword or present sword. Company officers and noncommissioned officers would also execute carry sword when the unit is given any manual of arms movement (e.g., port, left/right shoulder arms).
- 2. When at order sword and the command "Carry, SWORD" is given. On the command of execution "SWORD," bring the false edge of the blade against the shoulder seam, blade vertical, back of the grip to the rear, and the arm nearly extended. The right thumb and forefinger embrace the lower part of the grip, with the thumb against the trouser seam, and the remaining fingers joined in a natural curl behind the end of the hilt. This is the position of carry sword. (Officers see figures 5-3e and f; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-4e and f.)
- 3. When at present sword and the command of "Carry, SWORD" is given.
- a. On the preparatory command of "Carry," turn the true edge down. In this position, the right arm hangs naturally with the thumb along the trouser seam. The blade slants down to the front with the point 3 inches from the deck. (Officers see figures 5-7b and c; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-8b and c.)
- b. On the command of execution "SWORD," bring the false edge of the blade against the shoulder seam, blade vertical, back of the grip to the rear, and the arm nearly extended. The right thumb and forefinger embrace the lower part of the grip, with the thumb against the trouser seam, and the remaining fingers joined in a natural curl behind the end of the hilt. This is the position of carry sword. (Officers see figures 5-3e and f; noncommissioned officers see figures 5-4e and f.)

### 5005. EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD

1. The command is **"Eyes, RIGHT (LEFT)."** It may be given when halted at order sword or when marching at carry sword. It is executed in two counts.

### 2. Eyes Right (Left) While Halted

- a. On **"Eyes,"** raise the right hand to the level of and 6 inches in front of the neck. Keep the thumb on the left side of the grip, wrist slightly bent, and inner forearm against the body. The blade should incline forward at a 30-degree angle from vertical. This movement is the same as that made on the preparatory command of **"Present."** (Officers see figure 5-5; noncommissioned officers see figure 5-6.)
- b. On "RIGHT (LEFT)," bring the point down smartly, without whipping, to a position 3 inches above the deck and slightly right of the right foot. Straighten the arm so the knuckle bow (noncommissioned officers) or the acorn (officers) is against the trouser seam. The blade is slanted down and to the front, with the true edge to the left. The thumb remains on the left side of the grip. At the same time, turn the head and eyes 45 degrees to the right (left). If in extreme right (left) file, continue looking straight ahead. (Officers see figure 5-9; noncommissioned officers see figure 5-10.)



Figure 5-9.--Eyes Right (Left) from Carry or Order Sword; Officers.

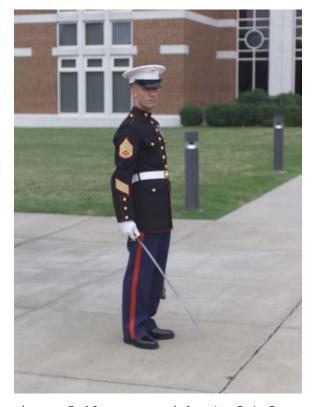


Figure 5-10.--Eyes Right (Left) from
Carry or Order Sword;
Noncommissioned Officers.

### 3. Order Sword From Eyes Right (Left) (Executed While Halted)

a. The command is "Ready, FRONT." It is executed in one count.

b. On "FRONT," turn the true edge of the sword down. At the same time, turn the head and eyes smartly to the front.

### 4. Eyes Right (Left) While Marching

- a. The command is "Eyes, RIGHT."
- b. The preparatory command "Eyes" is given as the right foot strikes the deck.
- c. As the left foot strikes the deck raise the right hand to the level of and 6 inches in front of the neck. Keep the thumb on the left side of the grip, wrist slightly bent, and inner forearm against the body. The blade should incline forward at a 30-degree angle from vertical. This movement is the same as that made on the preparatory command of "Present." (Officers see figure 5-5a; non-commissioned officers see figure 5-6a.) The left arm continues to swing naturally.
- d. The command of execution "RIGHT" is given as the right foot strikes the deck.
- e. As the left foot strikes the deck bring the point down smartly, without whipping, to a position 3 inches above the deck and slightly right of the right foot. Straighten the arm so the knuckle bow (noncommissioned officers) or the acorn (officers) is against the trouser seam. The blade is slanted down and to the front, with the true edge to the left. The thumb remains on the left side of the grip. At the same time, turn the head and eyes 45 degrees to the right. If in extreme right file, continue looking straight ahead. (Officers see figure 5-9; noncommissioned officers see figure 5-10.) The right arm does not swing. The left arm continues to swing naturally.
- f. To execute eyes left while marching, use the above sequence substituting left for right and right for left.

### 5. Carry Sword from Eyes Right (Left) (Executed When On The March)

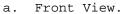
- a. The command is "Ready, FRONT." Execution is begun on the preparatory command.
  - b. The preparatory command "Ready" is given as the left foot strikes the deck.
  - c. As the right foot strikes the deck turn the true edge of the sword down.
- d. The command of execution "FRONT" is given as the left foot strikes the deck.
- e. As the right foot strikes the deck raise the sword to carry. At the same time, turn the head and eyes to the front.
- f. The best way to remember the movements of the sword when executing eyes right and ready front while marching is:

Foot RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT Command "Eyes, (UP) RIGHT" (DOWN) "Ready, (DOWN) FRONT" (UP)

### 5006. PARADE REST FROM ORDER SWORD

- 1. The command is "Parade, REST." This command is normally given from order sword, in which case it is executed in one count.
- 2. If given when at carry sword, go to order sword on the command of "Parade."
- 3. On "REST," move the left foot smartly 12 inches to the left. At the same time, lower the point of the sword to the deck, place the left hand behind you, just below the belt. (Officers see figure 5-11, noncommissioned officers see figure 5-12.)







b. Side View.

Figure 5-11.--Parade Rest from Order Sword; Officers.



a. Front View.



b. Side View.

Figure 5-12.--Parade Rest from Order Sword; Noncommissioned Officers.

### 4. Order Sword From Parade Rest

- a. The command is "Platoon (Company or Detail), ATTENTION." It is executed in one count.
- b. On "ATTENTION," bring the left heel smartly against the right and the left hand back to the side. Raise the blade so the point is 3 inches from the deck.

#### 5007. AT EASE FROM ANY POSITION OF THE SWORD

- 1. The command is "AT EASE." It may be given from any position of the sword.
- 2. On <u>"AT EASE,"</u> go to order sword if not already at that position. Then move the left foot 12 inches to the left and lower the point of the sword to the deck. Rest the weight equally on both feet with the legs straight. At the same time, place the left hand behind you. Keep the fingers straight and joined, the palm flat and facing rear. You may relax and, except for your right foot and sword point, move about. Do not talk. (See figure 5-13.)



Figure 5-13.--At Ease.

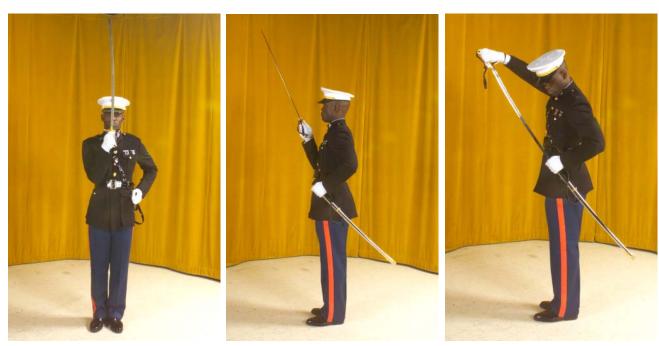
5008. REST FROM ANY POSITION OF THE SWORD. The command is "REST." It is executed in the same manner as at ease, the only difference being that you may talk.

#### 5009. TO RETURN TO ATTENTION

- 1. The command is "Platoon (Company or Detail), ATTENTION." Execution is begun on the preparatory command.
  - a. On "Platoon (Company or Detail)" go to parade rest.
- b. On "ATTENTION," bring the left heel smartly against the right and the left hand to the side. Raise the blade so the point is 3 inches from the deck.

#### 5010. RETURN SWORD FROM CARRY OR ORDER SWORD

- 1. The command is "Return, SWORD." Execution is begun on the preparatory command.
- 2. On the preparatory command "Return."
- a. Officers raise the right hand and sword to a position 6 inches in front of the neck, as in the first count of present sword. At the same time, grasp the scabbard with the left hand just above the upper brass mounting ring. Tilt it forward and turn it clockwise 180 degrees. The scabbard should form a 45-degree angle with the deck. Then lower the sword point to a position just above the opening of the scabbard. Look down at the opening. Guide the point into the opening with the left thumb and forefinger until the right wrist and forearm is parallel to the deck. Then release the scabbard with the left hand and re-grasp it below the upper brass mounting ring. At the same time, raise the head back to attention. The left hand holds the scabbard against the side. (See figure 5-14.)



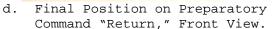
a. Raise Sword and Tilt b. Raise Sword and Tilt c. Insert Sword into Scabbard, Front View.

Scabbard, Side View.

Scabbard, Side View.

Figure 5-14.--Movements for Return Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Officers.





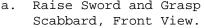


e. Final Position on Preparatory Command "Return," Side View.

Figure 5-14.--Movements for Return Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Officers--Continued.

b. Noncommissioned officers raise the right hand and sword to a position 6 inches in front of the neck as in the first count of present sword. At the same time, position the left thumb and forefinger just below the throat of the scabbard with the remaining fingers lightly grasping the lower front of the frog. Tilt the throat of the scabbard forward with pressure from the left thumb until the scabbard forms a 45-degree angle with the deck. Then lower the sword point to a position just above the opening of the scabbard. Look down at the opening. Guide the point into the opening with the left thumb and forefinger until the right wrist and forearm is parallel to the deck. Then release the scabbard and frog with the left hand and re-grasp the scabbard below the frog. At the same time, raise the head back to attention. The left hand holds the scabbard against the side. (See figure 5-15.)







Raise Sword and Grasp b. Raise Sword and Grasp c. Scabbard, Side View.



Insert Sword into Scabbard, Side View.



d. Final Position on Preparatory e. Final Position on Preparatory Command "Return," Front View.



Command "Return," Side View.

Figure 5-15.--Movements for Return Sword from Carry or Order Sword; Noncommissioned Officers.

c. On the command of execution "SWORD," push smartly down on sword and release the hand grip so it will slide all the way into the scabbard. Then bring the right hand smartly back to the right side. At the same time, release the scabbard with the left hand and assume the position of attention (officers must first turn the scabbard 180 degrees counterclockwise before releasing the scabbard with the left hand).

### 5011. FUNERAL CARRY

- 1. This position is assumed when marching for long distances such as when participating in funerals or street parades.
- 2. The movement to funeral carry may be executed at a pre-arranged point or on command. The command, if given, is "FUNERAL CARRY." It is given without rise or inflection of the voice as either foot strikes the deck. This is not a precision movement, therefore, there are no counts. However, there are three steps in executing the movement.
- 3. At a designated point or on command while at the carry:
- a. Reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the sword blade with the thumb and forefinger. The left forearm is parallel to the deck.
- b. Change the grasp of the right hand so that the officer's sword grip is grasped between the index and middle fingers, with all fingers curled around the hilt. (See figure 5-16a.) The noncommissioned officer's sword knuckle bow is grasped between the index finger and the thumb; the remaining fingers are joined and curled. (See figure 5-16b.)
- c. Release the grasp of the sword blade and return the left hand smartly to the side. Both arms will still swing in the same manner as they did at carry sword.
- 4. To return to carry sword, the command if given is "CARRY SWORD." It will be given without rise or inflection of the voice. At a designated point or on command the above steps will be repeated. However, on step two, the grasp of the sword will change back to the carry sword position.







b. Noncommissioned Officer.

Figure 5-16.--Funeral Carry.

### 5012. SWORD MOURNING KNOT

- 1. The mourning knot will be worn when officers and noncommissioned officers are detailed to military funerals when the sword is prescribed.
- 2. The mourning knot is a black ribbon of silk or other similar material, 3 inches wide and 27 inches long, each end finished with a small hem. The two flowing ends will be 12 inches long when the band is knotted upon the sword hilt.
- 3. On the officer's sword, the mourning knot is worn attached to the sword knot. It is formed by doubling the band, passing the free ends around and under the sword knot, immediately below the eye in the pommel, and then passing them back through the bight thus formed. The knot is then drawn taut. (See figure 5-17a.)
- 4. On the noncommissioned officer's sword, the knot is worn attached to the knuckle bow. It is formed by doubling the band, passing the free ends around the knuckle bow at the pommel, and then back through the bight thus formed and drawn taut. (See figure 5-17b.)







b. Noncommissioned Officer.

Figure 5-17.--The Sword Mourning Knot.

### 5013. CARRY OF THE SWORD AND SCABBARD UNRIGGED

- 1. When not in formation and when it is impractical to carry the sword and scabbard rigged at the side (slung or in a frog), the sword sheathed in its scabbard may be carried under the left arm.
- 2. Place the sword and scabbard under the pit of the left arm with the hilt just to the rear of the left shoulder (knuckle bow up for noncommissioned officers, sword knot up for officers). The drag (noncommissioned officers) or shoe (officers) is to the front with the convex edge of the scabbard up. The left arm is crooked so that the left hand supports the scabbard forward of the shoulder. The left upper arm holds the scabbard against the body. The sword and scabbard slant downward from hilt to drag/shoe. (See figure 5-18.)







b. Noncommissioned Officer.

Figure 5-18.--Unrigged Carry.

### 5014. MARCHING AT DOUBLE TIME WHEN ARMED WITH THE SWORD

- 1. While marching at double time, hold the sword diagonally across the chest with the true edge to the front. Hold the scabbard with the left hand just below the lower brass mounting ring or the frog. This is not a precision movement but should be executed as follows. (See figure 5-19.)
- a. On the preparatory command **"Double Time,"** drop the sword diagonally across the chest with the blade bisecting the head and left shoulder and the true edge to the front. Grasp the scabbard below the lower mounting ring (officer) and below the frog (noncommissioned officer).
  - b. The movements should be complete prior to the command of execution "MARCH."

2. Upon the command "Quick Time, MARCH" return to the position of carry sword and release the scabbard when taking the first 30-inch step.





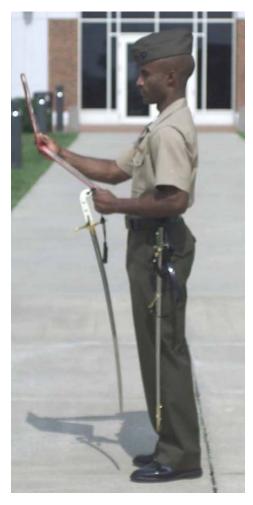


a. Front View, Officer. b. Left Side View, Officer. c. Left Side View, Noncommissioned Officer.

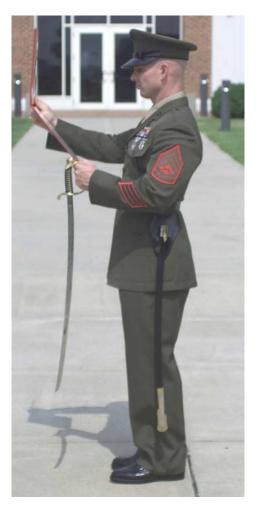
Figure 5-19.--Double Time Armed with a Sword.

### 5015. PUBLISH THE ORDER

- 1. When calling roll, reading documents, or publishing orders to a formation, slip the fingers of the left hand between the sword grip and sword knot (officers) or knuckle bow (noncommissioned officers). The sword hangs perpendicular to the deck and is held by the sword knot (officers) or knuckle bow (noncommissioned officers). The true edge is to the rear. Keep the left elbow against the side. Hold the document with both hands. (See figure 5-20.) This is not a precision movement but should be executed as follows.
- a. Execute the movement from the position of order sword. Raise and move the sword diagonally across the front of the body until you can grasp the sword knot or knuckle bow with the left hand.
- b. Upon completion of the reading reach across with the right hand, re-grasp the sword grip and return the sword to the position of order sword







b. Staff Noncommissioned Officer/
Noncommissioned Officer.

Figure 5-20.--Publish the Order.

### 5016. FORMING AN ARCH OF SWORDS FOR WEDDINGS

- 1. The arch of swords for weddings is authorized for commissioned, warrant and staff noncommissioned officers only. The arch of swords ceremony is an old English and American custom, which gives a symbolic pledge of loyalty to the newly married couple from their Marine family. Only the newly married couple is allowed to pass under the arch.
- 2. The ushers normally form the sword detail, however other officers, warrant or staff noncommissioned officers may be designated as needed. Customarily, six or eight members take part in the ceremony. The usher's form at the bottom of the chapel steps, in two equal ranks, at normal interval, facing each other, with sufficient room between ranks (3 to 4 paces) for the bride and groom to pass. The senior usher is positioned in the left rank furthest from the chapel exit. (See figure 5-21.)

CHAPEL ENTRANCE					
	GROOM	BRIDE			
		SENIOR USHER			

Figure 5-21.--Formation for the Arch of Swords.

- 3. After the guests have left the chapel to observe the ceremony, the bride and groom exit the chapel and stand just outside the main entrance. The senior usher will then form the arch of swords by giving the command of "Draw, SWORD."
- a. On the preparatory command of "Draw," execute the first count of the movement as described in paragraph 5001.
- b. On the command of execution "SWORD," the sword is removed from the scabbard in one continuous motion to an angle of 45 degrees, points touching across the aisle formed by the ushers. At this point halt and do not complete the final counts of draw sword.
- 4. The bride and groom, and only the bride and groom, then pass under the arch. As the newlyweds approach the last two ushers, (e.g., the two farthest from the chapel entrance) they slowly lower their swords to halt the couple. The senior usher then says "Welcome to the Marine Corps Family" or "Welcome aboard Mr./Mrs. \_\_\_\_\_ (rank of military member can be substituted for Mr./Mrs.), and then announce the new couple to those assembled." The last two ushers then slowly raise their sword back to the arch position and allow the couple to pass.
- 5. After the newlyweds have cleared the arch the senior usher gives the command of "Return, SWORD."
- a. On the preparatory command of "Return," move the sword to the present position and then to the scabbard as described in paragraph 5010.
- b. On the command of execution "SWORD," complete the movement of return sword as described in paragraph 5010.

- 6. The senior usher then dismisses the detail.
- 7. Though it is traditional that swords are never unsheathed in a chapel, the chaplain may grant permission to form the arch of swords indoors in the event of inclement weather. The ceremony would be performed at the rear of the chapel near or in the vestibule. The ceremony begins after the chaplain has concluded the wedding ceremony with the bride and groom passing under the arch of swords before the guests depart and is performed in the same manner as described above.

### 5017. PASSING AN UNSHEATHED SWORD

- 1. At a Marine Corps Birthday cake cutting ceremony or a military wedding reception it is customary to use an officer or noncommissioned officer's sword to cut the birthday or wedding cake.
- 2. For a Marine Corps cake cutting ceremony the sword is usually placed unsheathed on the cake cart and handed to the commanding general/commanding officer by the senior escort. This is done by laying the sword over the left forearm, cutting edge away from the body, and the hilt towards the commanding general/commanding officer. (See figure 5-23.)
- 3. At a wedding an officer, warrant or staff noncommissioned officer passes his sword and presents it to his bride, by laying the sword over his left forearm, cutting edge away from the body, hilt towards the bride. (See figure 5-23.) The bride takes the sword and cuts the wedding cake, with the groom's right hand resting over hers on the sword's hilt and with his left arm free to place around his bride. (NOTE: To preclude damaging the sword's blade, ensure it is thoroughly cleaned prior to returning it to the scabbard.)



Figure 5-23.--Passing an Unsheathed Sword.

# PART I: DRILL

### CHAPTER 6

### GUIDON MANUAL

					PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL					6000	6-3
ORDER GUIDON					6001	6-4
CARRY GUIDON					6002	6-5
DOUBLE TIME WITH THE GUIDON					6003	6-5
CARRY GUIDON FROM ORDER GUIDON					6004	6-6
ORDER GUIDON FROM CARRY GUIDON					6005	6-6
PRESENT GUIDON FROM ORDER OR CARRY GUIDON			•		6006	6-6
ORDER GUIDON AND CARRY GUIDON FROM PRESENT GUI	IDON		•		6007	6-8
PRESENT GUIDON FROM CARRY GUIDON AT OFFICERS C	CENTER .		•		6008	6-8
CARRY GUIDON FROM PRESENT GUIDON AT OFFICERS O	CENTER .		•		6009	6-8
READY GUIDON FROM ORDER OR CARRY GUIDON			•		6010	6-9
GUIDON SALUTE FROM CARRY OR ORDER GUIDON			•		6011	6-10
RESTS WITH THE GUIDON					6012	6-10
FIGURE						
6-1 GUIDON AND STAFF						6-3
6-2 ORDER GUIDON						6-4
6-3 CARRY GUIDON						6-5
6-4 GUIDON CARRY AT THE DOUBLE TIME				•		6-6
6-5 PRESENT GUIDON						6-7
6-6 EYES RIGHT WITH THE GUIDON				•		6-7
6-7 MOVEMENTS TO CARRY GUIDON FROM PRESENT O	GUIDON .					6-8
6-8 READY GUIDON				•		6-9
6-9 GUIDON SALUTE FROM CARRY OR ORDER GUIDON	л	 •				6-10
6-10 PARADE REST WITH THE GUIDON						6-11

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 6

GUIDON MANUAL

## 6000. GENERAL

1. The guidon is a company or battery identification flag. It is carried on an 8-foot staff at ceremonies and at other times prescribed by the commander. (See figure 6-1.) MCO P10520.3 provides detailed specifications for unit guidons.

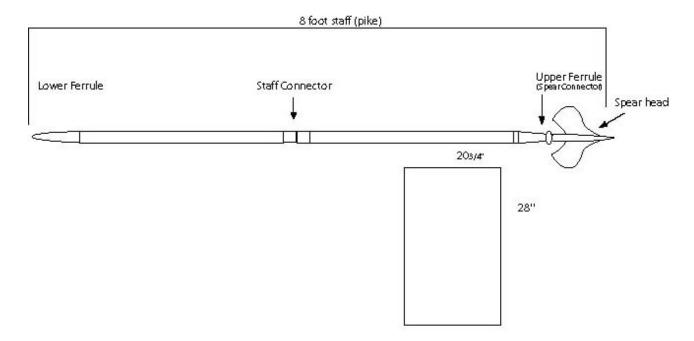


Figure 6-1.--Guidon and Staff.

- 2. In garrison, the guidon may be displayed at company headquarters between morning and evening colors, except during inclement weather and when carried in formation.
- 3. In selecting a guidon bearer, the company commander should choose an individual who is outstanding in bearing, appearance, and ability.
- 4. When acting as guidon bearer, the individual is considered under arms and does not have to carry a weapon. If a weapon is carried, it will be slung or holstered.
- 5. The guidon is brought to present guidon, parade rest, and order guidon with the company.
- 6. When at route step or at ease march, the guidon may be carried in either hand. When at order guidon, bring the guidon to carry on the preparatory command for marching in quick time.

- 7. When at order guidon, the guidon is brought to carry on the preparatory command for any facing or marching movement.
- 8. The guidon staff should be marked with two thumbtacks. The first tack marks the position of the guidon bearer's right thumb position at order guidon. The second thumbtack is placed 6 inches above the first tack to mark the guidon bearer's right thumb position at carry guidon.
- 9. The two grasps of the guidon are identified as the "V" grip and the strong grip. The staff is placed in the "V" formed by the thumb and fingers of the right hand. Thumb along the trouser seam with the fingers extended and joined. The strong grip is when the thumb is wrapped around the front of the staff with the fingers wrapped to the rear. (See figure 1-4.)
- a. The "V" grip is used at the order and when executing "Present Guidon" and during "Eyes Right/Left" and "Officers Center."
  - b. The strong grip is used while on the march and facing movements.

6001. ORDER GUIDON. At order guidon, the ferrule rests on the deck touching the outside edge of the right shoe close to the little toe. The staff is grasped in the "V" grip with the right elbow close to the side so that the forearm helps to support the staff. The upper staff rests in the hollow of the right shoulder. The staff is vertical with the flat side of the spearhead facing front. The rest of the body is at attention. (See figure 6-2.)



Figure 6-2.--Order Guidon.

6002. <u>CARRY GUIDON</u>. This is the normal position of the guidon while marching at quick time. It is carried using the strong grip with the ferrule 6 inches above the deck and the flat side of the spearhead facing front. (See figure 6-3.)



Figure 6-3.--Carry Guidon.

6003. <u>DOUBLE TIME WITH THE GUIDON</u>. For marching at double time, on the preparatory command, bring the staff across the body with the spearhead to the left. The right hand grasps the same spot as at carry. The right forearm is level with the deck and the elbow against the body. Grip the staff with the left hand in front of the point where the neck and left shoulder join. The flat side of the spearhead should face front. (See figure 6-4.)

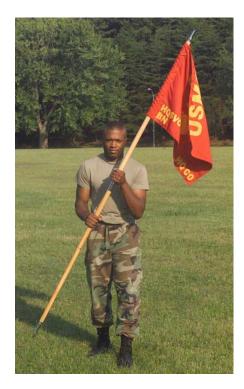


Figure 6-4.--Guidon Carry at the Double Time

- 6004. CARRY GUIDON FROM ORDER GUIDON. This movement is executed on the preparatory command for any movement that will require the guidon bearer's feet to be moved. Execution is begun on a preparatory command such as "Forward," "About," etc.
- 1. On the preparatory command, reach across the body and grasp the staff with the left hand 2 inches above the right.
- 2. Change the grasp to the strong grip, while raising the staff with the left hand until the ferrule is 6 inches above the deck. Hold the staff vertical with the right hand.
- 3. Move the left hand smartly back to the side.
- 6005. ORDER GUIDON FROM CARRY GUIDON. This movement is executed without command at the completion of any movement that required the guidon bearer to come to carry guidon. If there are a series of movements, executed immediately one after the other, order guidon will not be executed until after the final one. Order guidon is executed in one count by allowing the staff to slip through the right hand until the lower ferrule rests on the deck, and change the grasp to the "V" grip.
- 6006. PRESENT GUIDON FROM ORDER OR CARRY GUIDON. From order or carry guidon, this movement is executed on command. During officers center, the movement is executed after halting, from the carry and without command. Since the right hand is 6 inches lower on the staff at carry than at order, the ferrule will extend farther to the rear when at present guidon from order than it will at present guidon from the carry.

- 1. From order guidon, the command is "Present, ARMS." It is executed in one count.
- 2. On "ARMS," lower the guidon straight to the front. The right arm is extended until the lower portion of the staff rests in the pit of the right arm and the entire staff is horizontal to the deck. As the staff is lowered rotate the staff to the right so that the sharp edge of the spearhead faces down. Hold the right elbow firmly against the body. (See figure 6-5.)



Figure 6-5.--Present Guidon.

3. From carry guidon the command is **"Eyes, RIGHT (LEFT)."** It is executed in the same manner as from order guidon except that the head and eyes are turned right (left) 45 degrees as the guidon is lowered. (See figure 6-6.)



Figure 6-6.--Eyes Right with the Guidon.

### 6007. ORDER GUIDON AND CARRY GUIDON FROM PRESENT GUIDON

- 1. To return to order guidon, the command is "Order, ARMS."
- 2. On the preparatory command "Order," grasp the staff smartly and audibly with the left hand, palm up, at a point just forward of the right hand. (See figure 6-7.) On "ARMS," with the left hand, pull the guidon staff up and back to the vertical position of carry guidon, pivoting it on the right hand as it is lowered back to the right side. Then let the staff slide straight downward through the right hand until the lower ferrule rests on the deck, the left hand steadies the staff as it slides downward. Cut the left hand smartly back to its normal position at the left side. The flat side of the spearhead is back facing to the front.



Figure 6-7.--Movements to Carry Guidon from Present Guidon.

- 3. To return to carry guidon the command is "Ready, FRONT."
- 4. On the preparatory command "Ready," grasp the staff smartly and audibly with the left hand, palm up, at a point just forward of the right hand. On "FRONT," with the left hand, pull the guidon staff up and back to the vertical position of carry guidon, pivoting it on the right hand as it is lowered back to the right side. The flat side of the spearhead facing to the front. Cut the left hand back to the left side and turn the head and eyes smartly to the front.
- 6008. PRESENT GUIDON FROM CARRY GUIDON AT OFFICERS CENTER. This movement is executed without command, upon halting at officers center during a parade. It is executed in one count as explained in paragraph 6006.2. The movement will be executed on the fourth count after the command "Officers, HALT." For details on executing officers halt refer to paragraphs 17006.9 through 17006.14.

### 6009. CARRY GUIDON FROM PRESENT GUIDON AT OFFICERS CENTER

1. The command is "Carry, SWORD." "Ready, TWO" if the officers are not armed with swords.

- 2. On the preparatory command "Carry (Ready)," grasp the staff with the left hand and on the command of execution "SWORDS (TWO)" bring the staff back to the carry guidon position as described in paragraph 6002.
- 6010. <u>READY GUIDON FROM ORDER OR CARRY GUIDON</u>. This movement is used as a signal for aiding troops in the execution of commands where hearing verbal commands is difficult. When directed by the unit commander, the guidon is brought to ready guidon on specified preparatory commands. Ready guidon may be used as a signal for the execution of any command except present arms and eyes right (left), at which times the guidon must render honors.
- 1. On the specified preparatory command, bring the left hand across the body to grasp the staff above right hand. Change the grasp of the right hand so that the staff is gripped from the rear. Then raise the right hand to shoulder height, causing the guidon to be raised approximately 3 feet. At the same time, change the grasp of the left hand from above the right hand to just above the lower ferrule. This is the position of ready guidon. (See figure 6-8.)
- 2. On the command of execution, smartly lower the right hand and staff to the position of carry guidon. At the same time, return the left hand to a position above the right hand and steady the staff as the grasp of the right hand is changed. Return the left hand to the position of attention.
- 3. Ready guidon may also be executed without command during formation of a unit prior to march on for a review of parade. The guide executes it after the unit has been brought to attention (right shoulder arms if so armed) after the adjutant has commanded, "Sound, ATTENTION." Ready guidon is used to signal the adjutant that the unit is ready for his next command.



Figure 6-8.--Ready Guidon.

### 6011. GUIDON SALUTE FROM CARRY OR ORDER GUIDON

- 1. The command is "Guidon (Rifle), SALUTE." This movement may be executed on command, when in formation, or individually if the guidon bearer is in route to or from a formation. It is executed in two counts
- 2. On **"SALUTE,"** move the left hand, palm down, smartly to a position approximately 18 inches above the right hand with the left arm parallel to the deck. Keep the thumb and fingers straight and together. Touch the staff with the first joint of the forefinger. Turn the head and eyes toward the person being saluted. (See figure 6-9.)



Figure 6-9.--Guidon Salute from Carry or Order Guidon.

3. After the salute is returned, or the command "Order (Ready), ARMS (TWO)" is given move the left hand smartly back to the left side and look to the front.

### 6012. RESTS WITH THE GUIDON

### 1. Parade Rest from Order Guidon

a. The command is **"Parade, REST."** It is executed in one count. It may be given only when halted at attention.

b. On the command of execution "REST," slide the right hand up the staff to shoulder height. The staff remains in place and vertical. Without lost of motion, straighten the right arm so the staff of the guidon tilts forward at 30 degrees. The fingers and thumb of the right hand are wrapped around the staff. The ferrule remains in the same position as at order guidon. The flat side of the spearhead remains facing front. Place the left hand behind the back, just below the belt. Keep the fingers straight and touching. The palm is flat and facing the rear. At the same time, move the left foot smartly 12 inches to the left of the right foot. (See figure 6- 10b.)





a. Front.

b. Side.

Figure 6-10.--Parade Rest with the Guidon.

### 2. At Ease from Any Position of the Guidon

- a. The command is  ${}^{\mathbf{NAT}}$  EASE." It is executed in two counts. It may be given only when halted at attention.
- b. On the command, and for count one, execute parade rest as described in paragraph 6012.1b.
- c. On the second count, you may relax and, except for your right foot and ferrule, move about. Do not talk.

- 3. Rest from Any Position of the Guidon. The command is "REST." It is executed in the same manner as at ease the only exceptions being that you may talk and hold the staff in either hand.
- 4. <u>Fall Out from Order Guidon</u>. The command is "<u>FALL OUT</u>." It may be given only from order guidon. Upon the command, leave your position in ranks but remain nearby.

### 5. Order Guidon from Rest Positions

- a. From parade rest, at ease, and rest, the command is "Platoon (Company or Battalion), ATTENTION." On the preparatory command, go to parade rest, if not already in that position. At the command "ATTENTION," go smartly to order guidon.
- b. From fall out, the command is **"FALL IN."** Upon the command, go back to your position in formation and stand at attention at order guidon.

# PART I: DRILL

### CHAPTER 7

### NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
GENERAL	7000	7-5
COLOR SALUTES	7001	7-7
HOISTING, LOWERING, AND FOLDING THE NATIONAL ENSIGN	7002	7-7
SALUTES AND HONORS TO THE NATIONAL FLAG	7003	7-12
COMPOSITION OF THE COLOR GUARD	7004	7-13
SYNCHRONIZING THE MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE COLOR GUARDS ARMED WITH RIFLES	7005	7-18
SECTION 1: MANUAL OF THE COLORS		
ORDER COLORS	7100	7-25
CARRY COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS	7101	7-26
ORDER COLORS FROM CARRY COLORS	7102	7-28
PRESENT COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS	7103	7-31
SALUTES BY THE ORGANIZATIONAL COLORS	7104	7-32
ORDER COLORS FROM PRESENT COLORS	7105	7-33
PRESENT COLORS FROM CARRY COLORS	7106	7-33
CARRY COLORS FROM PRESENT COLORS	7107	7-33
RESTS WITH THE COLORS	7108	7-33
EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER COLORS	7109	7-35
CARRY OR ORDER COLORS FROM EYES RIGHT (LEFT)	7110	7-36
TRAIL ARMS WITH THE COLORS	7111	7-37
SECTION 2: MOVEMENTS OF THE COLOR GUARD		
FACE THE COLOR GUARD TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)	7200	7-39
FACE THE COLOR GUARD TO THE REAR	7201	7-40

		PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
MOVEMENTS	UTILIZED BY JOINT COLOR GUARDS (JCG)	7202	7-41
RIGHT (LE	FT) WHEEL	7203	7-41
LEFT ABOU	T	7204	7-42
	SECTION 3: COLOR GUARD PROTOCOL		
GENERAL .		7300	7-43
RECEIVING	THE COLORS BY THE COLOR GUARD	7301	7-43
RECEIVING	THE COLORS BY THE COLOR COMPANY (BATTALION)	7302	7-44
DISMISSIN	G THE COLOR GUARD	7303	7-45
RETURNING	THE COLORS BY THE COLOR GUARD	7304	7-45
CASING AN	D UNCASING THE COLORS	7305	7-45
TROOPING	THE COLORS	7306	7-47
INDOOR CE	REMONIES INVOLVING COLOR GUARDS	7307	7-48
ORDERING	COLORS, STAFFS AND OTHER CEREMONIAL GARRISON PROPERTY	7308	7-52
	FIGURE		
7-1	DIFFERENT TYPES AND NOMENCLATURE OF ENSIGNS		7-8
7-2	POSITION OF NATIONAL ENSIGN AT HALF-MAST		7-9
7-3	FOLDING THE ENSIGN	•	7-11
7-4	COLOR GUARD COMPOSITION		7-14
7-5	THE COLOR STAFF		7-17
7-6	CARRY COLORS TO ORDER COLORS		7-18
7-7	CARRY COLORS TO PRESENT COLOR	•	7-20
7-8	PRESENT COLORS TO CARRY COLORS		7-22
7-9	ORDER COLORS	•	7-25
7-10	CARRY COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS	•	7-26
7-11	ORDER COLORS FROM CARRY COLORS		7-28

		PAGE
7-12	PRESENT COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS	7-31
7-13	SALUTES BY THE ORGANIZATIONAL COLORS	7-32
7-14	COLOR GUARD AT PARADE REST	7-34
7-15a	EYES RIGHT, HALTED	7-35
7-15b	EYES RIGHT, MARCHING	7-36
7-16	MARCHING AT TRAIL COLORS	7-37
7-17	RIGHT (LEFT) TURN	7-39
7-18	COUNTERMARCH	7-40
7-19	RIGHT (LEFT) WHEEL ABOUT	7-41
7-20	LEFT ABOUT	7-42
7-21	RECEIVING/RETURNING THE COLORS BY THE COLOR GUARD	7-43
7-22	RECEIVING/RETURNING THE COLORS BY THE COLOR COMPANY	7-44
7-23	UNCASING AND CASING COLORS	7-46
7-24	TROOPING THE COLORS	7-48
7-25	POSTING AND RETRIEVING THE COLORS INDOORS	7-49
7-26	MARCH IN COLUMN OF TWOS AND REFORM	7-50
7-27	MARCH IN COLUMN OF ONES AND REFORM	7-50
7-28	POSTING AND RETRIEVING THE COLORS INDOORS (FLAG STANDS SEPARATED)	7-51

#### SECTION I: DRILL

#### CHAPTER 7

#### NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS

### 7000. GENERAL

- 1. When flown from ships or crafts of the Navy or from a flagstaff at commands ashore, the national flag will be displayed per the provisions of *U.S. Navy Regulations*. The national flag is also called the "national ensign" or "ensign."
- 2. Marine organizations are equipped with a national flag and an organizational flag. The organizational flag is an official flag that is authorized to be displayed by an organization of the U.S. Marine Corps.
- 3. When mounted on a staff (pike) and carried by an individual on foot, or displayed or cased in a fixed location, the national flag is called the "national colors" and the organizational flag is called the "organizational colors." The term "colors" means either or both the national colors and the organizational colors.
- a. The use of the plural form of the word color (colors) to designate a single flag, ensign, standard, or pennant comes from the ancient tradition of referring to the multiple colors found on these types of standards. This tradition is carried on today when we refer to the national colors; red, white, and blue and the Marine Corps colors; scarlet and gold. The plural form is also used when referring to the types of movements, ceremonies or musical accompaniment involving the colors, i.e., carry colors, morning colors, "To the Colors" etc.
- b. When designating personnel or units as part of color details then the appropriate singular or plural form of the word will be used, i.e., color guard, color company, etc.
- 4. When mounted on a vehicle, the national flag is called the "national standard" and the organizational flag is called the "organizational standard." The term "standard" means the national standard only. The term "standards" means both the national standard and the organizational standard.
- 5. In garrison or on board ship, the colors of an organization, when not in use, are kept by the commanding officer. Whenever practicable, colors should be kept uncased and displayed in the office of the commanding officer, or other appropriate place. They may be cased, however, by placing them within a protective covering. Colors that are kept cased and not used often should be unfurled and aired frequently.
- 6. The colors (standards) may be carried in any formation in which two or more companies participate, and in escorts and honor guards when ordered. Separate companies and detachments, who are authorized organizational colors, may carry colors when two or more platoons participate. Unless otherwise directed for special ceremonies, the national colors will always be carried when the organizational colors are carried, but the national colors may be carried alone.

- 7. In battalion formations, the colors (standards) will be posted with a designated color company and in regimental formations with a designated color battalion. The color company (battalion) is posted in the formation so that the color guard is in the approximate center of the formation (right or forward of center if this is impossible).
- 8. In most regimental formations, only the colors (standards) of the regiment will be carried. When two or more separate battalions are formed as a regiment, only the colors (standards) of one battalion will be carried for the regiment. When authorized by the commander, however, the organizational colors of subordinate organizations may be carried in ranks (massed color guard) arranged behind the parent organization's color guard.
- 9. When the organizational colors are draped in mourning, the mourning streamer shall consist of a black crepe streamer 7 feet long and about 12 inches wide. A bowknot, the loops of which are 6 inches long, is tied in the center. This knot attaches the streamer to the upper ferrule, just below the spearhead. If a streamer attachment set is used, the bowknot will be tied on the upper ferrule below the streamer attachment set in a manner so as not to disturb the natural hang of the unit's battle streamers.
- 10. Uncased colors will be treated with dignity and formality. When moved while outdoors, they will be marched by a color guard. Whenever possible, they will be escorted by a color company (battalion) from the organizational headquarters to the place of the ceremony. If it becomes necessary to case or uncase the colors outdoors, it will be accomplished with proper ceremony as described in paragraph 7305.
- 11. Whenever the colors are brought forward of the line of troops (e.g., trooping the colors, for retirements, awards, etc.) the command must present arms. If a band is present, then the appropriate music, e.g., "National Anthem," "To the Colors," or "Retreat" is played
- 12. During training and rehearsals (except full dress rehearsals), colors will be cased.
- 13. Colors (standards) are never allowed to touch the deck.
- 14. Color guards do not fix bayonets.
- 15. The standard weapon used for the color guard is the M16A2 service rifle.
- 16. Those units, whose T/O ceremonial weapons are the M1 or M14 rifle, should refer to appendixes A and B for the manual of arms.
- 17. The use of gold fringe on the U.S. Flag is expressly forbidden for Marine Corps organizations.
- 18. The U.S. Flag, when displayed or carried on a staff (pike) is adorned with a red, white, and blue rope and tassel. The organizational color is adorned with a scarlet and gold rope and tassel. However, once a unit has been awarded a streamer the rope and tassel is removed from the organizational color and a streamer attachment set added between the upper ferrule and the spearhead. Ropes and tassels are affixed to the top of the staff between the two ribs of the upper ferrule using a girth hitch knot. (See figure 7-5.)

- 19. The national and organizational colors are only destroyed when; they have become soiled beyond cleaning, torn beyond repair and to keep them from falling into enemy hands.
- 20. Flags that may have a historical significance are disposed of per the instructions contained in MCO P10520.3.
- 21. National and organizational colors will only be carried on wooden 9 1/2-foot flagstaffs. The use of metal flagstaffs is only authorized for Marine Barracks Washington, DC.
- 22. For further information concerning flags, streamers and guidons refer to MCO P10520.3.

## 7001. COLOR SALUTES

- 1. By the National Colors (Standard). The national colors (standard) renders no salute, except as specified in *U.S. Navy Regulations*, paragraph 1263.1.
- 2. By the Organizational Colors. In military ceremonies, the organizational colors salutes while the "National Anthem," "To the Colors," "Retreat," or "Hail to the Chief" is being played, and when rendering honors to the organizational commander, individual of higher rank, or the dead, but in no other case. (See par. 7104.)
- 3. By the Organizational Standard. The organizational standard renders no salutes as it is mounted on a vehicle.

## 7002. HOISTING, LOWERING, AND FOLDING THE NATIONAL ENSIGN

## 1. General

- a. The ceremonial hoisting and lowering of the national ensign at 0800 and sunset, respectively, shall be accomplished ashore per the provisions of U.S. Navy Regulations and this paragraph.
- b. A detail consisting of a noncommissioned officer and two enlisted members of the guard will hoist and lower the ensign. This detail will be armed with sidearms, if the special equipment of the guard includes sidearms; otherwise, the pistol belt only will be worn.
- c. The commander of the guard ashore will see that the proper ensign is flown at the appropriate time and under all weather conditions. For different types of ensigns. (See figure 7-1.) Any member of the guard who observes any hazard to the ensign, such as loosened halyards, fouling, etc., will immediately report them to the commander of the guard.
- 2. Positions of the Ensign. The ensign is flown from the peak or truck of the mast, except when directed to be flown at half-mast. The ensign at half-mast is flown, when possible, with the middle point of its hoist opposite the middle point of the mast. The middle point of a guyed mast is midway between the peak of the mast and the point of attachment of the guys. The middle point of a mast with a yardarm is midway between the peak of the mast and the yardarm. Technically, an ensign at any position other than at the peak of the mast is half-mast. Local conditions may require other positions. To half-mast the ensign, it is first hoisted to the peak and then lowered to the half-mast position.

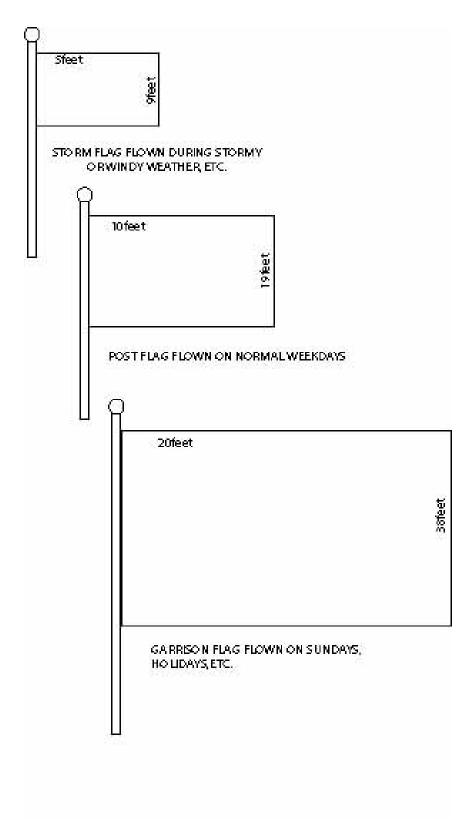


Figure 7-1.--Different Types and Nomenclature of Ensigns.

3. Hoisting the Ensign. The detail assigned to hoist the ensign is formed in line at the guardhouse with the noncommissioned officer carrying the folded ensign in the center. The detail is then marched to the flagstaff, halted, and the ensign attached to the halyards. The halyards are manned by the two enlisted members, who take positions on opposite sides of the staff, facing it, so they will be able to hoist the ensign without fouling it. The flag should be clearly marked so that the blue field is raised first. Additionally, the ensign should be pulled sufficiently, prior to the beginning of colors, to insure the blue field is hoisted first. This action precludes the embarrassment of hoisting the ensign upside down. The noncommissioned officer continues to hold the ensign until it is hoisted clear of his grasp to prevent it from touching the deck. When the ensign is clear, the noncommissioned officer executes a hand salute. After the ensign is hoisted, the other members of the detail grasp the halyard in their left hand and execute a hand salute. On the last note of the "National Anthem" or "To the Colors," all members of the detail terminate their hand salutes. If the ensign is to be flown at halfmast, it is then lowered slowly to that position. (See figure 7-2.) The halyards are then secured to the cleat of the mast. The detail is again formed, marched to the guardhouse, and dismissed.

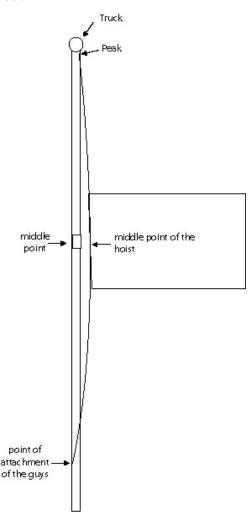


Figure 7-2.--Position of National Ensign at Half-Mast.

- 4. Lowering the Ensign. The detail is formed at the guardhouse, marched to the flagstaff, and the halyards manned in the same manner as for hoisting the ensign. On the first note of the "National Anthem" or "Retreat," the ensign is slowly lowered. If at half-mast, it is first hoisted smartly to the peak on the first note of the music, and then slowly lowered. The noncommissioned officer catches it at the last note of the music. The ensign is detached from the halyards and folded as prescribed below. The halyards are secured to the mast; the detail is formed and marched to the guardhouse, where the ensign is turned over to the commander of the guard.
- 5. Replacing an Ensign Already Hoisted. There may be times when it is necessary to replace the ensign after morning colors but prior to evening colors. Some examples are, changing to a storm flag due to inclement weather; the ensign becomes fouled in the halyards; the ensign is raised upside down; etc.
- a. If the flagstaff is double rigged, i.e., has two sets of halyards, the new ensign is hoisted to the peak or truck and then the ensign being replaced is slowly lowered, folded and returned to the guardhouse.
- b. If the flagstaff has only one halyard, two color details are used to replace the ensign. The first color detail slowly lowers the ensign, and then quickly moves from the flagstaff to fold the old ensign. The second color detail, with the replacement ensign, then moves to the flagstaff and hoists the new ensign to the peak or truck. Both details salute as the replacement ensign is hoisted. Both color details then return to the guardhouse.
- 6. <u>Folding the Ensign</u>. The ensign is folded in half the long way so the crease parallels the red and white stripes. It is folded in half again so the new crease also parallels the red and white stripes with the blue field on the outside of the fold. The lower corner of the fly end (away from the blue field) is folded up to the top so the single (folded) edge lays perpendicular across the stripes. By repeatedly folding along the inboard edge of the triangle, the ensign is folded into the shape of a cocked hat. (See figure 7-3.)

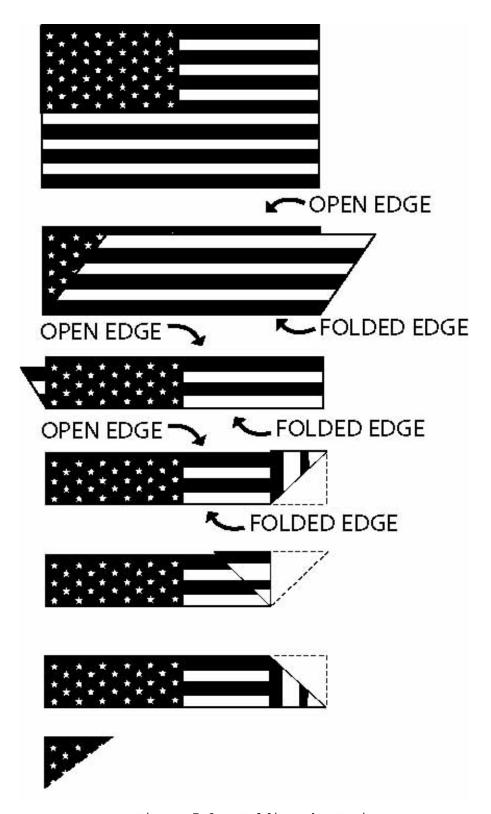


Figure 7-3.--Folding the Ensign.

## 7003. SALUTES AND HONORS TO THE NATIONAL FLAG

- 1.  $\underline{\text{General}}$ . Salutes to the national flag are rendered per U.S. Navy Regulations. (See chapter 12, section 2.)
- 2. <u>By Individuals</u>. Individuals in the Navy, when in uniform and covered will render the appropriate salute (hand, rifle, etc.) as indicated below. Persons not in uniform will stand at attention, face the flag and place the right hand over the heart. Gentlemen, if covered, remove their headdress with the right hand and hold it at the left shoulder, so that the right hand is over the heart.
- a. During morning colors and evening colors individuals stop and face the flagstaff, or in the direction of the music, when "Attention" is sounded. Salutes are rendered by individuals on the first note of the "National Anthem," "To The Colors," or "Retreat," and terminated on the last note. Individuals would remain at attention facing the flagstaff/music until "Carry On" is sounded, and then continue about their duties.
  - b. When being passed by or passing the national colors (standard) uncased.
- c. Small flags carried by individuals and flags flying from flagstaffs, either stands alone or affixed to a building, (except during morning and evening colors) are not saluted.
- d. A folded flag being carried to morning colors, or from evening colors, by a color detail is considered cased and not saluted.

## 3. By Persons in Formation

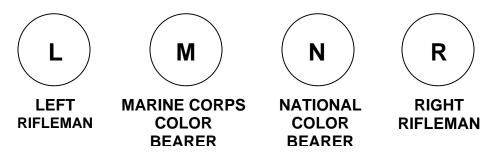
- a. During morning colors and evening colors the formation commander stops the formation and causes it to face the flagstaff, or in the direction of the music, when "Attention" is sounded. The formation commander salutes for the formation on the first note of the "National Anthem," "To The Colors," or "Retreat," and terminate the salute on the last note. The formation is kept at attention facing the flagstaff/music until "Carry On" is sounded at which time the formation commander would move the formation to its destination or dismiss the formation.
- b. When being passed by or passing the national colors (standard) uncased, persons in formation are brought to attention and order arms if halted, or attention if marching. The formation commander shall render the salute for his unit, facing the colors if the formation is halted. Persons in formation participating in a ceremony shall, on command, follow the procedure prescribed for the ceremony.
- c. Small flags carried by individuals and flags flying from flagstaffs, either stands alone or affixed to a building, (except during morning and evening colors) are not saluted.
- d. A folded flag being carried to morning colors, or from evening colors, by a color detail is considered cased and not saluted.

4. <u>By Occupants of Vehicles</u>. During morning colors or evening colors or when being passed by or passing an uncased national colors, all vehicles in motion will be brought to a halt. Persons riding in such vehicles shall remain seated at attention until colors are over or the color has passed.

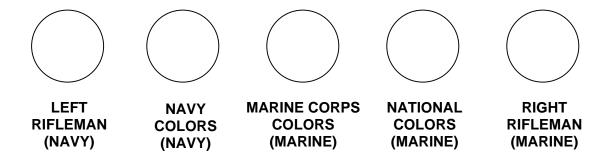
## 7004. COMPOSITION OF THE COLOR GUARD

- 1. The standard Marine Corps color guard consists of four individuals of approximately equal height. Two noncommissioned officers are the color bearers and two other members, junior to the color bearers, are the color guards. The senior color bearer carries the national colors and commands the color guard. The junior color bearer carries the organizational colors, which is always on the left of the national colors. (See figure 7-4a.) If a female is part of the color guard she wears trousers, and not a skirt, for uniformity. The color bearers should not wear medals or ribbons and badges because the slings will destroy them. Slings are adjusted so that the colors are the same height when at the carry or, if this isn't possible, the national colors are slightly higher than the organizational colors. If necessary, have the senior color bearer slightly taller than the organizational color bearer. All members of the color guard wear the pistol belt (white belt if in blues); the color bearers wear the pistol belt over the sling to keep the sling firmly in place. If the color guard is wearing the service cover, then they use two chin-straps. One is worn normally and the second one is worn under the chin. When only the national colors is carried, the color guard will include only one color bearer.
- 2. Color guards carrying the Navy and Marine Corps service colors will consist of five members, three Marines and two Navy members. The national color bearer and commander of the color guard will be a Marine. (See figure 7-4b.)
- 3. A Joint Armed Forces Color Guard will consist of eight members; three Army, two Marine, one Navy, one Air Force, and one Coast Guard. The national color bearer and commander of a joint color guard will be a soldier. The respective service colors are aligned to the left of the national colors per DoD directives. (See figure 7-4c.) For color guards involving service academies, reserve or National Guard colors, refer to chapter 14, for the proper precedence.
- 4. Massed colors is when a regimental or larger unit commander desires to have all of that command's subordinate colors in the color guard. The first rank of massed colors consists of the two riflemen, the national colors and the colors of the senior unit present. This is the senior color guard. The remainder of the organizational colors form ranks of four behind the first rank, by seniority, from the color guards right to left. (See figure 7-4e.) Odd numbered colors are placed by seniority, and are filled in from right to left. (See figure 7-4d.) During parades and ceremonies when the colors are brought forward, only the first rank, senior color guard, marches forward. If colors are to be trooped, the senior color guard only is trooped. The remainder of the massed colors marches on with the unit to their position in the line of troops, leaving space for the senior color guard.
- 5. The national colors of foreign countries will not be carried by the same color guard carrying the United States colors. When necessary, a separate color guard, consisting of one noncommissioned officer and two enlisted, will be formed to carry foreign colors.
- 6. The flags or banners of non-U.S. military organizations (e.g., Boy Scouts, Kawanas Club, etc.) are not carried in the color guard.

- 7. Color guards armed with rifles will be trained to execute a modified rifle manual. This involves pauses on the part of one or the other riflemen so that the rifles move to and from the right and left shoulders at the same time, as described in paragraph 7005.
- 8. The color guard is formed and marches in one rank at close interval with the color bearers in the center. While marching, members of the color guard do not swing their free arms. The color guard does not execute to the rear march, about face, flanking movements or fix bayonets. When the unit to which the color guard is attached executes any such commands, the senior color bearer orders a movement appropriate for the color guard.
- 9. The color bearers are unarmed, but the color guards carry either pistols or rifles (except when inside a chapel). Only color guards mounted on horseback carry the noncommissioned officer's sword vice a rifle or pistol. When participating in a ceremony inside a chapel, the color guard will be unarmed and uncovered.

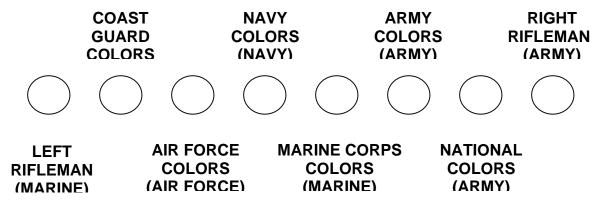


a. Marine Corps Color Guard.



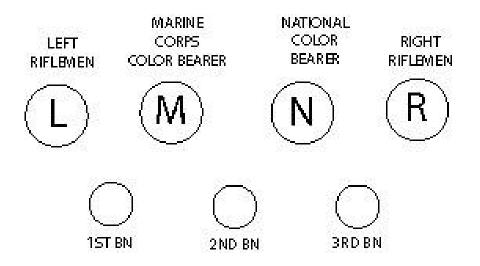
b. Navy and Marine Corps Color Guard.

Figure 7-4.--Color Guard Composition.



c. Joint Armed Services Color Guard.

# **INF REGT**



d. Placement of Odd Numbered Colors in a Massed Color Guard. (Using a Marine Regiment as an example)

Figure 7-4.--Color Guard Composition--Continued.

## Division Color Guard M R **Infantry Regt Infantry Regt Infantry Regt Artillery Regt Infantry Bn** Infantry Bn **Infantry Bn Headquarters** Bn **Infantry Bn Infantry Bn** Infantry Bn Infantry Bn **Artillery Bn Artillery Bn** Infantry Bn Infantry Bn AAV Bn Combat Eng Bn **Artillery Bn Artillery Bn** LAR Bn Recon Bn Tank Bn

e. Massed Colors. (Using a Marine Division as an example)

Figure 7-4.--Color Guard Composition--Continued.

10. All colors carried by the color guard are attached to staffs of equal height. The standard color staff consists of a 9 1/2-foot, hardwood pole capped at each end by metal ferrules. The use of the all-metal staff is only authorized for Marine Barracks, Washington, DC. A metal spearhead screws into the top of the staff and a streamer attachment device may also be affixed to display an organization's award streamers. (See figure 7-5.) Streamers are placed with the senior streamer at the front of the staff. Subsequent streamers are then placed clockwise, around the staff, as symmetrically as possible.

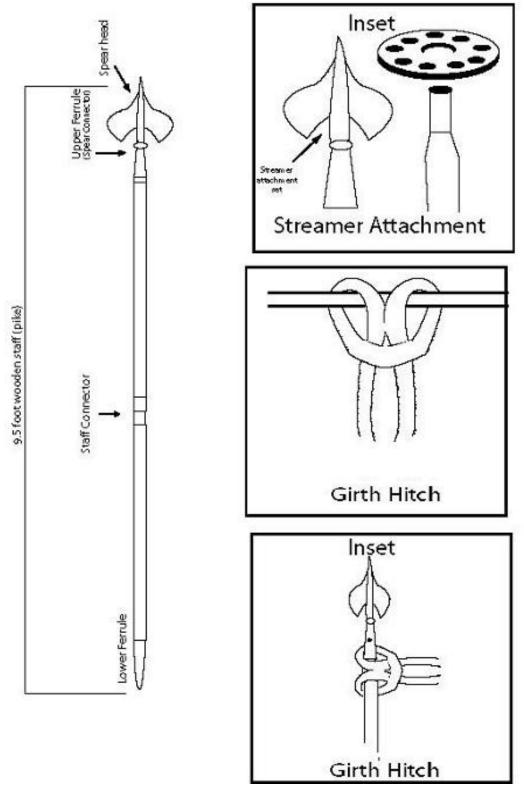


Figure 7-5.--The Color Staff.

## 7005. SYNCHRONIZING THE MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE COLOR GUARDS ARMED WITH RIFLES

- 1. The manual of arms for color guards armed with rifles must be synchronized so that the rifles move (e.g., off of or to the shoulder) at the same time. Since the left rifleman is at left shoulder arms and the right rifleman is at right shoulder arms, moving to and from the right/left shoulder to the order, present or back the shoulder often involves different "counts" in the movement for each rifleman. To get the rifles moving together one or the other of the riflemen will have to do an occasional pause in the manual of arms so the other rifleman may catch up. When executing the rifle manual, both riflemen will wait for the senior color bearer's command of "Ready, CUT" before executing the final count of the movement.
- a. Order Colors to Carry Colors. The command is "Carry, COLORS." This is a four-count movement for both riflemen. The right rifleman goes to right shoulder arms and the left rifleman goes to the left shoulder arms.
- b. <u>Carry Colors to Order Colors</u>. The command is **"Order, COLORS."** This is a four-count movement for the right rifleman and a five-count movement for the left rifleman. In order to have the rifles move to the order together, the "counts" are modified as follows: (See figure 7-6.)



a. Start.



b. Count One.
Right Rifle Left Rifle, Re-grasps
Stands Fast. the Small of the Stock.

Figure 7-6.--Carry Colors to Order Colors.



c. Count Two.
Both Rifles Moved from the Shoulder.



d. Count Three. Both Riflemen Re-grasp the Barrel.



e. Count Four.
Both Rifles Moved to the Right Side.



f. Count Five. Ready Cut.

Figure 7-6.--Carry Colors to Order Colors--Continued.

- c. Order Colors to Present Colors. The command is "Present, COLORS." This is a two-count movement for both riflemen, with both executing present arms with the rifle.
- d. <u>Present Colors to Order Colors</u>. The command is **"Order, COLORS."** This is a three-count movement for both riflemen, with both executing order arms with the rifle.
- e. <u>Carry Colors to Present Colors</u>. The command is **"Present, COLORS."** This is a three-count movement for both riflemen; however, it becomes a four-count movement to synchronize the rifles being brought from the left and right shoulder to present arms. (See figure 7-7.)







b. Count One.
Right Rifle Left Rifle, Re-grasps
Stands Fast. the Small of the Stock.

Figure 7-7.--Carry Colors to Present Color.



c. Count Two.



d. Count Three. Both Rifles Moved from the Shoulder. Right Rifle Re-grasps Left Rifle, the Small of the Stock. Stands Fast.



Count Four. Both Rifles Rotated to Present Arms.

Figure 7-7.--Carry Colors to Present Color--Continued.

f. Present Colors to Carry Colors. The command may be "Carry, COLORS" or "Shoulder, ARMS." This is a three-count movement for the left rifleman and a fourcount movement for the right rifleman to return the weapons to the left and right shoulder from present arms. (See figure 7-8.)



Start.



c. Count Two. Right Rifle, Grasps Left Rifle, Both Rifles Moved to the Shoulder. the Butt of the Rifle. Stands Fast.



b. Count One Both Rifles Rotated to Port Arms.



d. Count Three.

Figure 7-8.--Present Colors to Carry Colors.



e. Count Four. Ready Cut.

Figure 7-8.--Present Colors to Carry Colors--Continued.

## CHAPTER 7

#### NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS

## SECTION 1: MANUAL OF THE COLORS

## 7100. ORDER COLORS

- 1. At order colors, the lower ferrule rests on the deck touching the outside edge of the right shoe. The staff is gripped in a strong grip with the thumb wrapped around the front of the staff with the fingers wrapped to the rear. The right elbow is held close to the side so the forearm will help support the staff. The upper staff rests in the hollow of the right shoulder. The staff is vertical with the flat side of the spearhead facing front. The color bearer is at attention. (See figure 7-9.)
- 2. Color guards armed with rifles are at order arms when the colors are at the order.



Figure 7-9.--Order Colors.

## 7101. CARRY COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS

- 1. When changing from order colors to carry colors, the command is "Carry, COLORS."
- 2. At the Command "Carry," change the grip on the staff to the "V" grip so as to grip it from the rear between the thumb and fingers of the right hand with the fingers around the staff.
- 3. At the command "COLORS," raise the staff smartly with the right hand to a point where the lower ferrule is just above the sling socket. While raising it, keep the staff vertical. Grasp the staff at the lower ferrule with the left hand to steady it and align it with the sling socket. Do not look down.

NOTE: All organizational colors will be raised to the carry with the national colors.

- 4. Seat the lower ferrule in the sling socket. As the ferrule is seated, permit the right hand to slide down the staff to a position directly in front of the color bearer's chin. (See figure 7-10a.)
- 5. Color guards armed with rifles execute right and left shoulder arms at the command "COLORS" so that the rifles are on the outboard shoulders as described in paragraph 7005.
- 6. All members of the color guard will halt their movements before executing the last count. (See figure 7-10b.) On the senior color bearer's command "Ready, CUT," all members will move their free hands smartly to their sides. (See figure 7-10c.) If the color staffs need additional support due to high winds, the color bearers will grip the staff with their left hands just below their right.



a. Raising Staff Seating the Ferrule.

Figure 7-10.--Carry Colors from Order Colors.



b. Last Count.



c. Carry Colors.

Figure 7-10.--Carry Colors from Order Colors--Continued.

## 7102. ORDER COLORS FROM CARRY COLORS

- 1. When changing from carry colors to order colors, the command is "Order, COLORS (ARMS)." Execution is begun on the preparatory command.
- 2. At the command "Order," grip the staff with the left hand above the ferrule and remove the staff from the sling socket. The staff moves to the right side of the body with the ferrule just forward of the sling socket. (See figure 7-11a.)
- 3. At the command "COLORS," lower the staff to a point approximately 2 inches above the deck along the outside edge of the right shoe; release the staff with the left hand and re-grip it above the right hand. (See figure 7-11b.)
- 4. Relax both hands so the staff will slide down until the ferrule rests on the deck. Then trim or strip the colors by maintaining a grip on the staff with the left hand and raising the right hand to lightly grasp the fabric of the colors. Pull it down along the staff (do not attempt to throw or tuck it) and re-grip the staff with the right hand, with the fabric under the right arm. (See figures 7-11c and d.) Then change the position of the right hand to that described for order colors.
- 5. Color guards armed with rifles will execute order arms from right and left shoulder as described in paragraph 7005.1a. All members of the color guard will halt their movements before executing the last count. The senior color bearer will then command "Ready, CUT," at which time all members of the color guard will return their left hands martly to their sides and color guards will assume order arms.

(See figure 7-11e.)



a. Removing the Ferrule.

Figure 7-11.--Order Colors from Carry Colors.



b. Lowering the Staff.



c. Trimming the Colors.

Figure 7-11.--Order Colors from Carry Colors--Continued.



d. All Movement Halted.



e. Movement Complete.

Figure 7-11.--Order Colors from Carry Colors--Continued.

## 7103. PRESENT COLORS FROM ORDER COLORS

- 1. To change from order colors to present colors the command is "Present, COLORS (ARMS)." Execution is begun on the preparatory command.
- 2. At the command "Present," change the grip on the staff in the same manner as for carry colors. The national color bearer executes the movement to carry colors.
- 3. At the command "COLORS," organizational color bearer executes the movement to carry colors. The color guards execute present arms. (See figure 7-12.)
- 4. On the senior color bearer's command "Ready, CUT," only the color bearers will move their left hands smartly to their sides.



Figure 7-12.--Present Colors from Order Colors.

## 7104. SALUTES BY THE ORGANIZATIONAL COLORS

- 1. Once the color guard is at present colors, and when appropriate, the organizational color bearer will render a salute with the organizational colors by straightening the right arm and lowering the staff naturally to the front. The staff will rotate naturally as it goes forward causing the sharp edge of the spearhead to face down. (See figure 7-13.)
- 2. Salutes by the organizational colors are not automatic when presenting colors. They will be rendered only during honors to national colors, to the commander of the organization represented by the colors or to an individual senior in rank to the organizational commander. (e.g., during a parade or review when the adjutant presents the command to the commander of troops, the organizational colors does not salute, unless the commander of troops is the organizational commander or of higher rank.)
- 3. When musical honors are played, the organizational colors will salute on the first note of music. The colors will be returned to the vertical position following the last note of music or the last volley of a gun salute. If no music is to be played and a color salute is appropriate, the organizational colors will salute immediately after the color guard has gone to present colors.
- 4. When marching, the salute is rendered when 6 paces from the reviewing stand or person to be saluted. Carry colors is resumed when 6 paces beyond the reviewing stand or person to be saluted.



Figure 7-13.--Salutes by the Organizational Colors.

## 7105. ORDER COLORS FROM PRESENT COLORS

- 1. When changing from present colors to order colors, the command is "Order, COLORS (ARMS)."
- 2. At the command "Order," if the organizational colors are still saluting, it will be brought back to the vertical position with the flat side of the spearhead facing the front. The color bearers then grip the staff with the left hand above the ferrule and remove the staff from the sling socket. The staff remains centered on the body with the ferrule just forward of the sling socket. (See figure 7-11a.)
- 3. At the command "COLORS," all colors are brought to the position of order colors. Color guards execute order arms from the shoulder as described in paragraph 7005.1a. Colors are trimmed, if necessary, and the command "Ready, CUT" is given in the same manner as for order colors from carry colors.

## 7106. PRESENT COLORS FROM CARRY COLORS

- 1. To change from carry colors to present colors, the command is "Present, COLORS (ARMS)."
- 2. At the command of execution "COLORS," the color guards execute present from the shoulder as described in paragraph 7005.1d.
- 3. The national color bearer remains at carry colors.
- 4. The organizational color will salute if appropriate.

## 7107. CARRY COLORS FROM PRESENT COLORS

- 1. To change from present colors to carry colors, the command is "Carry, COLORS."
- 2. At the command "Carry," if the organizational colors are saluting, it will be brought back to the vertical position with the flat side of the spearhead facing the front.
- 3. At the command "COLORS," color guards return to the shoulder as described in paragraph 7005.1f. Before executing the last count, the color guards will await the senior color bearers command "Ready, CUT."

#### 7108. RESTS WITH THE COLORS

- 1. The color guard assumes the parade rest position in lieu of at ease or rest. At ease or rest are not used by the color guard when carrying uncased colors. Only the senior color bearer or person in charge of a formation with which colors are posted gives the command from the position of order color. It is executed in one count.
- 2. At the command "Parade, REST;" "AT EASE;" or "REST," all members of the color guard execute parade rest. The color staff will remain along the color bearer's side and will not be thrust forward as with a guidon staff. (See figure 7-14.) The national and organizational colors bearers will grasp the sling socket with their left hand.



a. Front View.



b. Rear View.

Figure 7-14.--Color Guard at Parade Rest.

## 7109. EYES RIGHT (LEFT) FROM CARRY OR ORDER COLORS

- 1. The command is **"Eyes, RIGHT (LEFT)."** It will be given only when marching at carry colors or while halted at order colors.
- 2. When marching at carry color, at the command "RIGHT," all members of the color guard except the national color bearer and the individual on the right turn their head and look 45 degrees to the right. When the reviewing officer of a parade is entitled to a salute by the organizational colors, the salute is executed at the command "RIGHT." (See figure 7-15b.)
- 3. When marching at carry color, at the command "LEFT," all members of the color guard except the national color bearer and the individual on the extreme left turn their head and look 45 degrees to the left. When the reviewing officer of a parade is entitled to a salute by the organizational colors, the salute is executed at the command "LEFT."
- 4. When halted at order color, at the command "RIGHT," all members of the color guard except the national color bearer turn their head and look 45 degrees to the right. (See figure 7-15a.) The organizational color cannot salute from order color.
- 5. When halted at order color, at the command "LEFT," all members of the color guard except the national color bearer turn their head and look 45 degrees to the left. The organizational color cannot salute from order color.



Figure 7-15a.--Eyes Right, Halted.



Figure 7-15b.--Eyes Right, Marching.

## 7110. CARRY OR ORDER COLORS FROM EYES RIGHT (LEFT)

- 1. The command is "Ready, FRONT."
- 2. When marching at carry colors, at the senior color bearer's command "Ready," if the organizational colors saluted, it resumes to the carry. At the command "FRONT," all members of the color guard who executed eyes right (left) will return their head and eyes smartly to the front.
- 3. When at order colors during a review when the reviewing officer troops the line, ready front will not be given after eyes right. During such a ceremony, members of the color guard who executed eyes right, will follow the reviewing officer with their eyes, turning their heads back toward the front as he passes by. Once the reviewing officer is directly in front of them, all movement of the head and eyes is halted.

## 7111. TRAIL ARMS WITH THE COLORS

- 1. When performing indoor ceremonies in a location that the doors, ceilings, etc. are not high enough to carry colors in the normal manner, the colors would be carried at the trail.
- 2. Trail arms is assumed without command on any command that will cause the color guard to move. (e.g., "Forward, MARCH;" "Right Turn, MARCH;" etc.)
- 3. Color bearers, on the preparatory command, raise the staff 6 inches off the deck. Color guards assume trail arms. (See figure 7-16.)
- 4. On the command of execution, step off and move a short distance until given the command to halt.

NOTE: If necessary to lower the colors to clear a doorway reach across the body with the left hand and grasp the colors. Left forearm is straight and parallel to the deck, with the palm to the rear. All colors are tilted forward sufficiently to clear the door or ceiling spearhead flat to the front.

5. When the command to halt is given the color bearers return the colors to the order and move the left arm back to the left side. Color guards armed with rifles return to the order.



Figure 7-16.--Marching at Trail Colors.

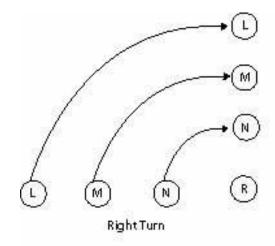
## CHAPTER 7

#### NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS

## SECTION 2: MOVEMENTS OF THE COLOR GUARD.

## 7200. FACE THE COLOR GUARD TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)

- 1. The command is "Right (Left) Turn, MARCH." It may be executed while halted, marking time, or marching.
- 2. On the command "MARCH," with the right (left) flank color guard acting as a stationary pivot, the color guard turns to the right (left) while half stepping until they face the new direction. When making the turn, all members of the color guard face the same direction maintaining their alignment. (See figure 7-17.) Upon completion of the turn, the color guard will be marking time. The senior color bearer must immediately give the next appropriate command, such as "Forward, MARCH" or "Colors, HALT."



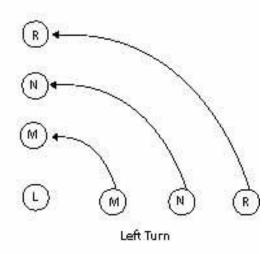


Figure 7-17.--Right (Left) Turn.

## 7201. FACE THE COLOR GUARD TO THE REAR

- 1. The command is "Countermarch, MARCH." It may be executed while halted, marking time, or marching. When marking time or marching, the command of execution "MARCH" is given as the left foot strikes the deck. On the command of execution, the entire color guard takes one step forward with the right foot and executes the movement. (See figure 7-18.)
- 2. The national color bearer pivots to the left, moving into the position formerly occupied by the organizational color bearer, facing the new direction of march and begins marking time.
- 3. The organizational color bearer takes one half step forward, pivots to the right outside the national color bearer, moving into the position formerly occupied by the national color bearer, facing the new direction of march and begins marking time.
- 4. The right color guard takes two half-steps forward, pivots to the left, outside the organizational color bearer, moving into the position formerly occupied by the left color guard, facing the new direction of march and begins marking time.
- 5. The left color guard takes three half-steps forward, pivots to the right outside the right color guard, moving into the position formerly occupied by the right color guard, facing the new direction of march and begins marking time.
- 6. Upon completion of this movement, the entire color guard marks time until it is halted or until it receives the command "Forward, MARCH" or "Colors, HALT."

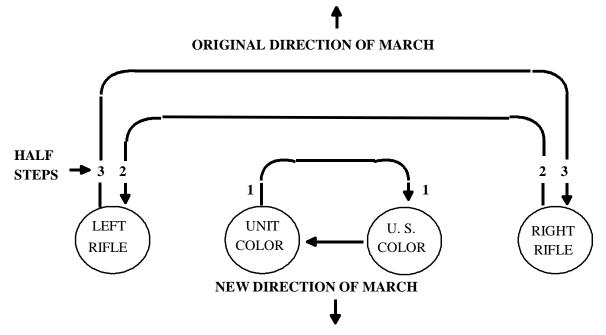
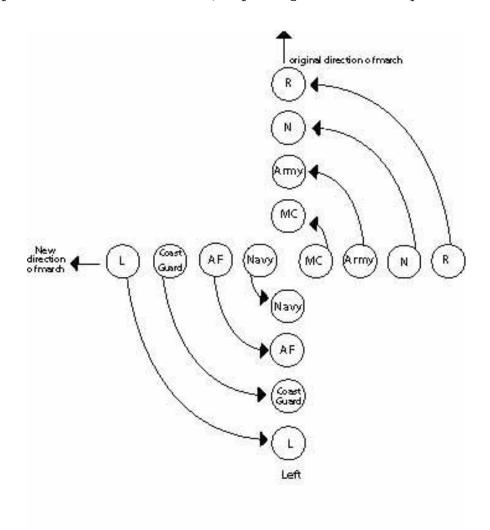


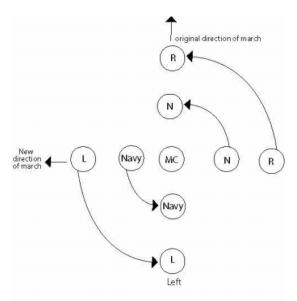
Figure 7-18.--Countermarch.

- 7202. MOVEMENTS UTILIZED BY JOINT COLOR GUARDS (JCG). JCGs use two basic movements to turn the color guard 90 or 180 degrees. These are the "Right (Left) Wheel, MARCH" and the "Left About, MARCH."
- 7203. RIGHT (LEFT) WHEEL. This movement is used to turn the JCG 90 degrees right or left and may be executed either from the halt, mark time, or quick time. In JCGs with an even number of members, the pivot point will be between the two, center color bearers. In JCGs with an odd number of members, the pivot point will be the spot occupied by the center color bearer.
- 1. On the command of execution "MARCH," the JCG will start marking time. At the same time, they will begin to turn slowly to the right/left while maintaining their alignment. For "Right Wheel," those to right of the pivot back step and those to the left half step until facing the new direction. This procedure is reversed for "Left Wheel."
- 2. Once facing the new direction of march (90 degrees), the JCG will either halt or step off in the new direction, depending on commands by the senior color bearer.



a. Pivot with Even Number.

Figure 7-19.--Right (Left) Wheel About.



b. Pivot with Odd Number.

Figure 7-19.--Right (Left) Wheel About--Continued.

7204. <u>LEFT ABOUT</u>. This movement is used to turn the JCG 180 degrees, and it may also be executed while halted, marking time, or quick time. On the command of execution "MARCH" it is executed in the same manner as above. The only exceptions are the pivot point; the degree of turn and it is only executed to the left.

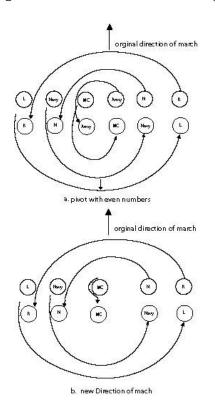


Figure 7-20.--Left About.

#### CHAPTER 7

#### NATIONAL AND ORGANIZATIONAL FLAGS

#### SECTION 3: COLOR GUARD PROTOCOL

- 7300. GENERAL. The primary mission of the color guard is to ensure that the national colors is handled and displayed with the utmost care and respect. Upon receiving or uncasing the national colors, the color guard assumes a ceremonial posture; meaning that all movement will be by marching at attention and the most relaxed halted position will be parade rest.
- 7301. RECEIVING THE COLORS BY THE COLOR GUARD. The color guard will use the following procedure in receiving the colors: (See figure 7-21.)
- 1. The color guard forms and marches to the place designated for receiving the colors.
- 2. The color guard is halted 3 paces from the adjutant and sergeant major that have taken appropriate positions for the delivery of the colors to the guard.
- 3. The senior color bearer commands the color guard to "Order, ARMS."
- 4. When the adjutant is ready to deliver the colors, the senior color bearer orders "Present, ARMS." At this command, the color bearers execute a hand salute, the color guards present arms.
- 5. The adjutant steps to the left oblique and transfers the national colors to the senior color bearer, who terminates salute in time to receive it at the position of carry colors. The adjutant then steps back and salutes.
- 6. Upon the adjutant's salute, the sergeant major, steps to the right oblique and transfers the organizational colors to the junior color bearer, who terminates salute in time to receive it at the position of carry colors. The senior enlisted then steps back and salutes.
- 7. When the senior enlisted salutes, the senior color bearer commands "Order, ARMS." The adjutant and senior enlisted terminate their salutes and the command of "ARMS" and march off.
- 8. The senior color bearer then marches the color guard to the color company (battalion).

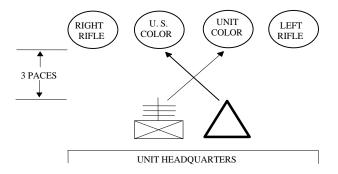


Figure 7-21.--Receiving/Returning the Colors by the Color Guard.

- 7302. RECEIVING THE COLORS BY THE COLOR COMPANY (BATTALION). Prior to forming for a ceremony in which the colors are to participate, the colors are to participate, the colors are received by the color company (battalion) by means of the following ceremony: (See figure 7-22.)
- 1. The company (battalion) is formed with its commander facing front.
- 2. The color guard approaches and halts 10 paces in front of and facing the company (battalion) commander remaining at the carry.
- 3. The company (battalion) commander faces about, towards the unit, and orders "Present, ARMS." The color guard executes present arms on the company (battalion) commander's command. The organizational colors salutes, if appropriate. The company (battalion) commander faces about again and salutes the colors.
- 4. The company (battalion) commander terminates salute, faces about, and commands "Order, ARMS." The color guard returns to the carry.
- 5. The company (battalion) commander faces about and orders the color guard to "POST THE COLORS." When the color company (battalion) is in line or mass, the post of the guard is 6 paces to the left of the company (battalion). When the company (battalion) is in column, the post of the guard is 6 paces behind.
- 6. When the color company (battalion) joins the formation, the color guard takes its appropriate post centered in the formation.
- 7. When in formation, the color guard executes parade rest when the color company (battalion) executes at ease or rest. The color guard will respond to all commands from the commander of troops or the commander of the color company (battalion) except when required by its unique movements to act independently.

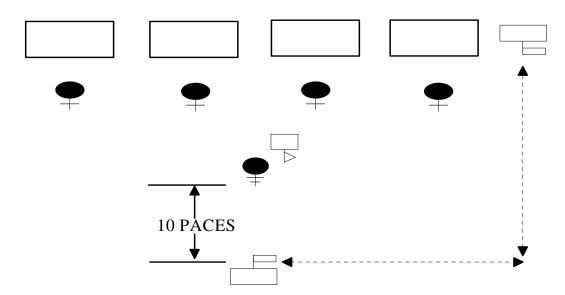


Figure 7-22.--Receiving/Returning the Colors by the Color Company.

- 7303. <u>DISMISSING THE COLOR GUARD</u>. In dismissing the color guard at the conclusion of a drill or ceremony, the procedure is as follows: (See figure 7-22.)
- 1. The guard marches from its post and halts 10 paces in front of and facing the company (battalion) commander, halts and remains at the carry.
- 2. The company (battalion) then executes present arms in the same manner described for receiving the colors, after which the color guard marches the colors to the quarters or office of the organizational commander.
- 3. The color guard is received by and dismissed from organizations smaller than a company (e.g., funeral escort) in a similar manner.
- 7304. RETURNING THE COLORS BY THE COLOR GUARD. The color guard will use the following procedure when parting with the colors: (See figure 7-21.)
- 1. The senior color bearer halts the guard 3 paces in front of the adjutant and senior enlisted who have taken positions near the office or quarters of the organization in time to receive the colors. The guard remains at carry colors.
- 2. When the color guard halts, the adjutant and senior enlisted salute. The Senior Enlisted, then terminates the salute and steps to the right oblique, receives the organizational colors from the junior color bearer, and then steps back.
- 3. The adjutant then terminates the salute and steps to the left oblique, receives the national colors from the senior color bearer, and then steps back.
- 4. The senior color bearer then commands "Present, ARMS." The color guards execute present arms, the color bearers hand salute. The adjutant faces about and the senior enlisted passes behind him to a position on the left. They then march into the office or quarters of the commanding officer where the colors are placed without further ceremony.
- 5. When the colors are out of sight or 6 paces away, the senior color bearer commands "Order, ARMS," and dismisses the guard or marches them back to their unit.

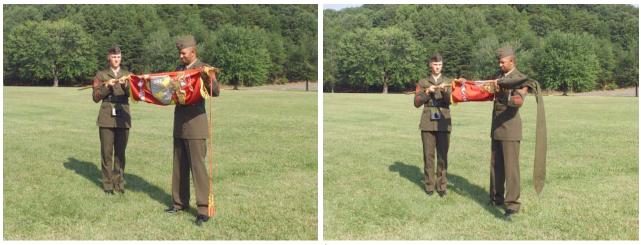
# 7305. CASING AND UNCASING THE COLORS

- 1. While it is not a precision movement, casing and uncasing the colors should be accomplished with appropriate dignity and ceremony.
- 2. To uncase the colors, the color guard will be formed at carry colors. The supernumerary or other designated individual(s) will center on the color guard. First the national color bearer and then the organizational color bearer will lower their staffs so that the cases may be removed. The individual(s) removing the cases will then step back and salute the national colors before retiring. (See figure 7-23a.)
- 3. To case the colors, the color guard will be formed at carry colors. The individual(s) with the cases will center on the color guard and salute the national colors. The organizational color bearer followed by the national color bearer will lower their staffs so that their colors may be furled and cased. Rather than

wrapping the colors around the staff, the colors should be folded on top of the staffs and held until the cases are slipped on. The rope and tassel and streamers, if any, are kept clear until the colors are folded onto the staff, and then are placed as flat as possible, on the colors. This may require two persons to accomplish. (See figure 7-23b.) Care should be taken to ensure that color cases fit easily over the colors. Cases constructed with too narrow of a diameter cause undue wrinkling and may even damage the colors.



a. Uncasing Colors.



b. Casing Colors.

Figure 7-23.--Uncasing and Casing Colors.

## 7306. TROOPING THE COLORS

1. When it is desired to highlight the unit colors and have them formally received by the entire battalion (or regiment) while forming for a review, parade, or any other ceremony, the ceremony for trooping the colors may be conducted. It is particularly appropriate to include trooping the colors as a part of ceremonies conducted to coincide with an important event in the unit's history. However, if the colors are to be brought forward for a retirement, promotion, awards or other similar type ceremony the colors should not, but may, be trooped since this would cause the command to present arms to the colors twice. (Once when the colors are trooped and once when they are brought forward for the awards or other ceremony)

# 2. Procedures for Trooping the Colors

- a. After forming at "Assembly," the color guard receives the battalion (regimental) colors as prescribed in paragraph 7301. The color company may also receive the color guard per paragraph 7302, or the color guard may take its position on the battalion (regimental) parade deck independently. In the former case, coincidental with "Adjutant's Call," the color guard initially marches on with the color company then breaks out of formation so as to take post on the left flank of the line of troops. In the latter case, the color guard marches independently on the parade ground and takes post on the left flank of the line of troops at "Adjutant's Call," or prior to "Adjutant's Call," as appropriate. (See figure 7-24.) Regardless, after taking post on the left flank, the color guard goes to order colors.
- b. The troops form at "Adjutant's Call" according to the commands and procedures prescribed for forming a battalion (regiment) for ceremonies, up to the point where the units complete dressing to the right, the guides are posted (if units marched on), and bayonets are fixed (if so prescribed). Then, the adjutant facing the command and posted midway between the line of company (battalion) commanders and the battalion (regimental) commander, commands "MARCH ON THE COLORS." The band plays appropriate music while the color guard, coming to the carry, marches from its position on the left flank, across the front of the battalion (regiment) along a line parallel to the line of troops and midway between the adjutant and line of company (battalion) commanders. Company (battalion) commanders and the company guide (battalion staff) salute the colors as they pass their front. Those company (battalion) commanders who are not passed by the colors will not salute. On reaching a point in front of the adjutant, the color guard executes a left turn to face the adjutant and halts, remaining at the carry. The adjutant then commands "Present, ARMS" and salutes the colors. The unit presents arms. The color guard executes present arms from the carry. The band plays either "To the Colors" or the "National Anthem." The battalion (regimental) commander and staff to salute on the first note of the music and terminate the salute on the last note. After completion of the music, the adjutant commands "Order, ARMS." The color guard returns to carry color on the command "Order, ARMS." The adjutant then commands "POST THE COLORS." The color guard countermarches, moves to the line of troops on the left of the color company (battalion), countermarches to face the front, halts, and goes to order colors.
- c. After the color guard is in position on the left of the color company (battalion), the parade or ceremony would proceed as prescribed in the appropriate chapter of this Manual.

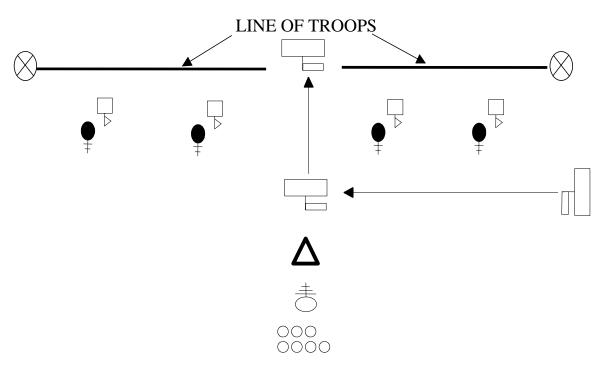


Figure 7-24.--Trooping the Colors.

### 7307. INDOOR CEREMONIES INVOLVING COLOR GUARDS

1. On occasion color guards will be required for indoor ceremonies, military or civilian. Normally an indoor ceremony consists of marching on the colors, the "National Anthem," (or pledge of allegiance), posting the colors and retiring the colors. Close coordination with the master of ceremonies, and an on-site rehearsal (if possible) are needed to preclude confusion and misunderstandings during the ceremony.

# 2. The Normal Sequence of Events Should be as Follow

- a. The master of ceremonies asks the guests to please rise for the march on the colors and to remain standing for the " $National\ Anthem"$  and the posting of the colors.
- b. The color guard marches in from the designated entry and moves to its position, and does a right (left) turn or countermarch to face the audience and remains at the carry. The senior color bearer then gives the command "Present, COLORS." The color guard executes. After the "National Anthem" is played the senior color bearer gives the command "Carry, COLORS." The senior color bearer would then give the commands necessary to move the color guard to 3 paces in front of where the colors are to be posted, halts and gives the command to "Order, COLORS." Once the color guard is at the order, the organizational color bearer then steps to the right oblique and places the organizational colors in the stand. Once the organizational color bearer is back in position the national color bearer steps to the left oblique and places the national colors into the stand. (See figure 7-25.) When the national color bearer is back in position the senior color

bearer commands "Present, ARMS." The riflemen execute present arms and the color bearers execute a hand salute. The senior color bearer then commands "Order, ARMS;" "Shoulder, ARMS;" and then using whatever commands necessary, marches the color guard from the auditorium.

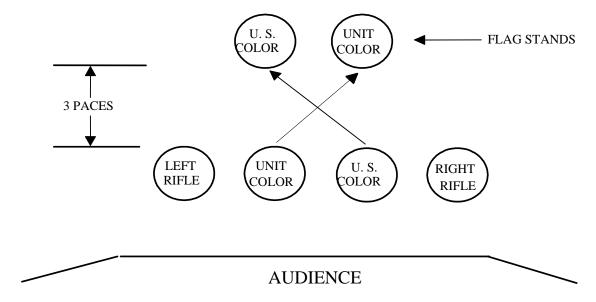


Figure 7-25.--Posting and Retrieving the Colors Indoors.

- 3. When it is time to retire the colors, the color guard assumes its position to re-enter the auditorium for that part of the ceremony.
- a. The master of ceremonies would than ask for the guests to rise for the entering of the colors.
- b. The color guard marches to a position 3 paces in front of where the colors are posted, halts and goes to the order. (See figure 7-25.) The senior color bearer then commands "Present, ARMS," the riflemen execute present arms and the color bearers execute a hand salute. The senior color bearer then commands "Order, ARMS." The color guard goes to the order. The national color bearer then steps to the left oblique and retrieves the national colors. When the national color bearer is back in position the organizational color bearer steps to the right oblique and retrieves the organizational colors. When the organizational color bearer is back in position the senior color bearer commands, "Carry, COLORS" and then, using whatever commands necessary, marches the color guard from the auditorium.
- 4. When performing and indoor ceremony, oddities will be encountered that will necessitate some adjustments by the color guard. Some examples are:
- a. If performing in a house of worship, covers are not worn and weapons are not carried. Those portions of the ceremony requiring present arms are deleted and the riflemen may be omitted.
  - b. The ceiling may be too low to carry colors; march in at the trail.

c. The aisles may be to narrow for a color guard to march in normal formation. The color guard would then march in by two's (See figure 7-26) or in column of ones. (See figure 7-27.) If marching in by twos then the color bearers lead and the riflemen follow. Upon reaching the spot for presenting the colors, the riflemen would step into their normal position. If marching in a column of ones the order of march is **ALWAYS**, right color guard, national color bearer, organizational color bearer, left color guard. When reaching their spot the color guard would reform. Make sure the colors don't reform inverted.

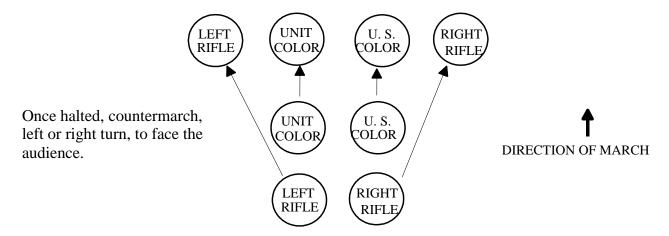


Figure 7-26.--Marching in Column of Twos and Reform.

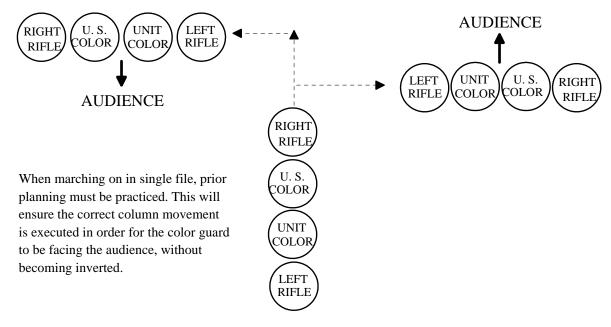


Figure 7-27.--March in Column of Ones and Reform.

- d. The flag stands you will be posting the colors into may be on different sides of the stage. If this occurs, the recommended sequence is:
  - (1) Execute the ceremony as discussed earlier.
- (2) After the "National Anthem" the colors countermarch and halt facing the new direction. The senior color bearer would command post the colors. The national color bearer and right rifleman step off to the left oblique and move to the flag stand and mark time. The right rifleman positions himself so as to be outboard of the national colors. After the national color bearer and right rifleman have cleared, the organizational color bearer and left rifleman step off in the right oblique and move to the flag stand and mark time. The left rifleman positions himself so as to be outboard of the organizational colors. (See figure 7-28.) Once both colors are in position the senior color bearer commands "Colors, HALT," and "Order, COLORS." The organizational colors is placed in the flag stand, then the national colors is placed in the flag stand. The senior color bearer then commands "Present, ARMS." The riflemen execute present arms and the color bearers execute a hand salute. The senior color bearer then commands "Order, ARMS;" "Center, FACE;" and "Forward, MARCH." The riflemen march at trail arms. The color guard moves to the center of the stage and marks time, slowly turning left or right towards the audience. The senior color bearer then commands, "Colors, Halt;" "Shoulder, ARMS;" and then marches the color quard from the auditorium.

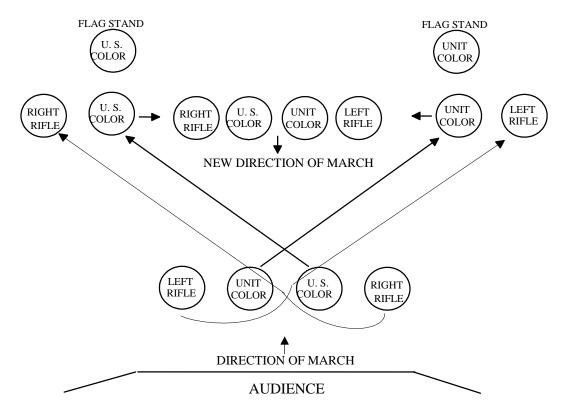


Figure 7-28.--Posting and Retrieving the Colors Indoors (Flag Stands Separated).

- (3) To retire the colors from separated flagpoles, the detail is marched into position facing the colors and halts. The senior color bearer then commands "Present, ARMS." The color guard riflemen execute present arms and the color bearers execute a hand salute. The senior color bearer then commands "Shoulder, ARMS." The riflemen return to the shoulder. The national color bearer and right rifleman then step off to the left oblique and move to the flag stand and mark time. The right rifleman positions himself so as to be outboard of the national colors. After the national color bearer and right rifleman have cleared, the organizational color bearer and left rifleman step off in the right oblique and move to the flag stand and mark time. The left rifleman positions himself so as to be outboard of the organizational colors. (See figure 7-25.) Once all are in position the senior color bearer commands "Colors, HALT," and "Order, ARMS." The senior color bearer then retrieves the national colors. The organizational color bearer then retrieves the organizational colors. The senior color bearer then commands "Center, FACE," and "Forward, MARCH." The color guard, at trail arms, moves to the center of the stage and marks time, slowly turning left or right towards the audience. The senior color bearer then commands "Colors, HALT;" "Carry, COLORS;" and then marches the color guard from the auditorium.
- e. The rule of thumb for all unusual situations not covered by this Manual is to perform in a military manner. However, never do something that would embarrass the Corps.

#### 7308. ORDERING COLORS, STAFFS AND OTHER CEREMONIAL GARRISON PROPERTY

- 1. Instructions for ordering flags, streamers, guidons and other heraldic items is found in MCO P10520.3B, section G. The list in appendix C contains the description, and National Stock Numbers of flags, staffs and other color guard equipment. The unit supply officer should be able to assist in finding the current prices and ordering the equipment.
- 2. Table 1, section  ${\tt E}$  of MCO P10520.3B is used to determine which type of organizational color a unit rates.

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 8

# SQUAD DRILL

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	8000	8-3
TO FORM THE SQUAD	8001	8-4
TO DISMISS THE SQUAD	8002	8-6
TO COUNT OFF	8003	8-6
TO ALIGN THE SQUAD	8004	8-6
TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL FROM NORMAL INTERVAL IN LINE	8005	8-9
TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM CLOSE INTERVAL IN LINE	8006	8-9
TO OBTAIN DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE	8007	8-9
TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE .	8008	8-10
TO FORM A COLUMN FROM IN LINE AND REFORM TO A LINE	8009	8-10
TO MARCH IN THE OBLIQUE	8010	8-11
TO MARCH TO THE REAR	8011	8-12
TO MARCH TO THE FLANK	8012	8-13
TO CHANGE DIRECTION OF A COLUMN	8013	8-13
TO FORM A COLUMN OF TWOS FROM A SINGLE FILE	8014	8-14
TO FORM A SINGLE FILE FROM A COLUMN OF TWOS	8015	8-15
TO STACK ARMS	8016	8-16
TO TAKE ARMS	8017	8-18
FIGURE		
8-1 SQUAD FORMATIONS		8-3
8-2 SIZING SQUADS		8-4
8-3 DRESS RIGHT DRESS		8-7
8-4 AT CLOSE INTERVAL DRESS RIGHT DRESS		8-8

		PAGE
8-5	DRESS LEFT	8-8
8-6	MARCHING TO RIGHT OBLIQUE	8-11
8-7	FORMING COLUMN OF TWOS FROM SINGLE FILE	8-14
8-8	FORMING SINGLE FILE FROM COLUMN OF TWOS	8-15
8-9	POSITIONS OF STACKMEN AND INDIVIDUALS TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT AT THE END OF THE FIRST STEP IN STACK ARMS	8-17
8-10	INSERTING RIFLES INTO THE STACKMEN'S FLING LOOP	8-17
8-11	FINAL POSITION OF STACK ARMS	8-18

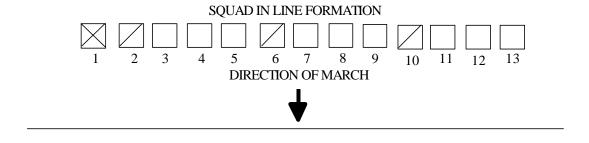
PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 8

SQUAD DRILL

#### 8000. GENERAL

- 1. A squad is a group of individuals formed for the purpose of instruction, discipline, control, and order.
- 2. Members of the squad take positions, move, and execute the manual of arms as stated in this Manual. All individuals execute the movements at the same time. Squads may drill as squads or as part of a platoon or larger formation.
- 3. Squads are kept intact when practicable. The normal formation for a squad is a single rank (squad in line) or single file (squad in column). (See figure 8-1.) This permits variation in the number of individuals composing the squad. The first formation is always in line. Column formation may be taken from line formation. A squad, not at drill, may be marched in column of twos by forming in two ranks.



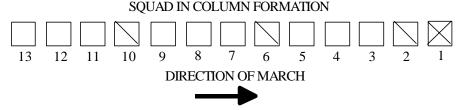


Figure 8-1.--Squad Formations.

- 4. The squad marches in line for minor changes of position only.
- 5. When the Squad is Armed with Rifles
- a. The command "Right (Left) Shoulder, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" or "Sling, ARMS" is given before commanding the squad to move, except for short distances. When moving short distances the command "Trail, ARMS" may be given or it may be executed automatically.
- b. At the command **"Squad, HALT"** remain at the position of right shoulder (left shoulder, port or sling) arms until **"Order, ARMS"** or some other manual command is given.

- 6. In this Chapter the term "unit leader," (e.g., "The unit leader then checks the alignment) means the individual drilling the squad. He/she may be the squad leader, other noncommissioned officer, or squad member drilling the squad for an inspection or evaluation. If the unit leader is the squad leader, then the number two Marine (see figure 8-1) executes the movements of the squad leader. The unit leader must maintain proper distance (3 paces) from the squad and remain centered on the squad during all drill movements.
- a. If the squad executes a right step, the unit leader, who is facing the squad, would execute a left step in cadence with the squad to maintain proper position. For a right step the unit leader would execute a left step.
- b. If the squad executes a back step, the unit leader would execute a half step, in cadence with the squad to maintain proper position.
- c. Movements of the unit leader during other squad movements are explained in the paragraph describing the movement.

### 8001. TO FORM THE SQUAD

1. Members of the squad normally form as indicated in figure 8-1. (e.g., maintain fire team/section integrity). However, for parades and ceremonies where appearance is more important, the squads should be sized. To size the squad the tallest member takes position 2 in figure 8-1 with the shortest squad member in position 13. The squad leader, regardless of height, always forms as the squad leader, in position one of figure 8-2.



a. Squad Formed with Unit Integrity.

Figure 8-2.—Squads Sizing



b. Squad Sized.

Figure 8-2.--Sizing Squads--Continued.

- 2. To form at normal interval, the command is "FALL IN."
- 3. The squad forms in line on the left of the squad leader. Each member of the squad, except the individual on the left flank, raises their left arm shoulder high in line with their body. Fingers are extended and joined, palm down thumb extended along the forefinger. Each individual except the squad leader turns their head and looks to the right. To obtain a normal interval, everyone places himself in line so their right shoulder touches the fingertips of the person on their right. As soon as each individual is in line with the person on their right, and the person on their left has obtained normal interval, they assume the position of attention smartly but quietly.
- 4. To form at close interval, the command is "At Close Interval, FALL IN."
- 5. The squad forms in line on the left of the squad leader. Each member of the squad, except the individual on the left flank, places their left hand on their hip, elbow in line with the body. They rest the heel of the palm on the hip with fingers extended and joined and pointing down. Everyone except the squad leader turns their head and looks to the right. To obtain close interval, they place themselves in line so their right arm touches the elbow of the person on their right. As soon as each individual is in line with the person on their right, and the person on their left has obtained close interval, they assume the position of attention smartly but quietly.
- 6. If the squad is armed, members fall in with weapons at the position of order arms. Weapons are inspected at once unless a report is to be taken. If so they will be inspected immediately following the report with the following commands: "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "Order, ARMS."

# 8002. TO DISMISS THE SQUAD

- 1. The squad is dismissed only from a line with individuals at attention.
- 2. Armed troops are dismissed with the commands "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "DISMISSED."
- 3. Unarmed troops are dismissed with the command "DISMISSED."

## 8003. TO COUNT OFF

- 1. In line, the command is "Count, OFF." At the command "OFF," everyone except the squad leader, turn their heads 90 degrees over the shoulder and look to the right. The squad leaders shout ONE. The person in the file to the left of the squad leaders turns his/her head smartly back to the front and at the same time shouts TWO. After the person to their right has shouted their number, each subsequent person to the left turns his/her head back to the front and at the same time shouts the next higher number. Numbers are counted off in quick time cadence.
- 2. In column, on the command **"From Front to Rear, Count, OFF,"** the squad leader smartly turns his/her head to the right 90 degrees over the shoulder and shouts ONE as the head is turned back to the front. Each subsequent rank, having seen the person's head in front of them return to the front, turns his/her head to the right and shouts the next higher number as the head is turned smartly back to the front. This is carried on in sequence at quick time cadence.

## 8004. TO ALIGN THE SQUAD

1. The purpose of these movements is to dress the alignment of the squad. They may be executed when the squad is halted at attention in line. The commands are "Dress Right (Left), DRESS" or "At Close Interval, Dress Right (Left), DRESS."

These commands are given only when the squad is at approximately the same interval as the interval at which the dress is commanded.

# 2. <u>Dress Right Dress</u>

- a. On the command "Dress Right, DRESS," everyone except the squad leader, smartly turn their heads to the right, 90 degrees over the shoulder look, and align themselves. At the same time, everyone except the individual on the left flank, provide interval by smartly raising their left arm to shoulder height and in line with their body. Fingers are extended and joined, thumb along the forefinger, palm down. (See figure 8-3.)
- b. As the base of the movement, the squad leader keeps his/her head and eyes to the front. All other members of the squad position themselves by short steps until their right shoulders lightly touch the fingertips of the person on their right.
- c. The unit leader, on his/her own command of execution "DRESS," faces half left, as in marching, and proceeds by the most direct route to a position on line with and one pace to the right of the individual on the right flank. At this position, the unit leader executes a halt in the oblique facing the rear of the formation, and then executes a right face, facing down the line of the squad. The unit leader aligns the squad by commanding those individuals in advance or rear of

the line to move forward or backward until in line. These individuals are designated by name or number. For example: "Jones, FORWARD;" or "Number Three, BACKWARD." Those individuals will move until receiving the command "STEADY." The unit leader may execute a series of short side steps to the right or left in order to identify an individual. However, prior to commanding the identified individual to move, the unit leader will be on line with the rank. After verifying the alignment of the squad, the unit leader faces to the right in marching, marches straight to a point 3 paces beyond the squad, halts, faces to the left, and commands "Ready, FRONT." Immediately after commanding "FRONT," the unit leader marches by the most direct route back to a post 3 paces front and centered on the squad.

- d. On the command "Ready, FRONT," all members of the squad who raised their left arm and turned their head to the right, will smartly but quietly lower their arm to their side and at the same time turn their head back to the front, assuming the position of attention.
- e. When aligning a squad of well-drilled troops or when there is insufficient time to verify alignment, the unit leader may command "Ready, FRONT" from his/her normal position (3 paces front and centered), without having verified alignment.



Figure 8-3.--Dress Right Dress.

- 3. At Close Interval Dress Right Dress. This movement is executed in the same manner as dress right dress except for the following:
- a. On the command "At Close Interval, Dress Right, DRESS," those individuals providing interval will do so by placing the heel of their left hand on their hip with the elbow in line with their body. Fingers are extended and joined and pointing down. Members gaining interval will move by short steps until their right arm is touching the left elbow of the individual to their left. (See figure 8-4.)



Figure 8-4.--At Close Interval Dress Right Dress.

4. <u>Dress Left Dress and at Close Interval Dress Left Dress</u>. These movements are similar to dress right dress and at close interval dress right dress except that alignment is made toward the left. The individual on the left flank of the rank is the base of the movement and stands fast. On the command "Dress Left, DRESS," or "At Close Interval, Dress Left, DRESS," everyone except the individual on the left flank smartly turn their heads to the left, look, and align themselves. At the same time they will smartly raise their left arm or elbow to provide interval (the left arm is used for both dress right and dress left). The unit leader will verify alignment of the squad from its left flank. (See figure 8-5.)



Figure 8-5.--Dress Left.

5. To align in column, the command is "COVER." At this command, members move as necessary to place themselves directly behind the person in front of them, still maintaining a 40-inch distance.

#### 8005. TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL FROM NORMAL INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to close the interval between individuals of a squad in line to 4 inches. It may be executed when the squad is halted at attention and in line at normal interval. The command is "Close, MARCH."
- 2. The squad leader is the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leader stands fast and places his/her left hand on his/her hip, as if dressing at close interval, to provide interval for the individuals to the left. At the same time, all other members of the squad face to the right as in marching, march toward the right flank until approximately 4 inches from the person in front of them, halt, and face to the left. They then execute at close interval dress right dress. After aligning and without command, they will smartly lower their left hands and turn their heads to the front as soon as the individual to their left has touched their elbow with his/her right arm and stopped moving.
- 3. On his/her command of execution, the unit leader steps to the left in marching. He/she marches parallel to the squad maintaining a distance of 3 paces from the squad. When approximately on the center of the squad at close interval the unit leader halts and faces the squad. He/she then adjusts to the center of the squad by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

## 8006. TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM CLOSE INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to extend the interval between individuals of a squad in line to one arm length. It may be executed when the squad is halted at attention and in line at close interval. The command is "Extend, MARCH."
- 2. The squad leader is the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leader stands fast and raises his/her left arm to shoulder height to provide interval for the person on the left. At the same time, all other members of the squad face to the left as in marching, march toward the left flank until they have opened approximately a 30-inch distance from the person behind them, halt, and face to the right. They then execute dress right dress. After aligning and without command, they will smartly, and quietly, lower their left arms and turn their heads to the front as soon as the individual to their left has touched their finger tips with his/her right shoulder and has stopped moving.
- 3. On his/her command of execution, the unit leader steps to the right in marching. He/she marches parallel to the squad maintaining a distance of 3 paces from the squad. When approximately on the center of the squad at normal interval the unit leader halts and faces the squad. He/she then adjusts to the center of the squad by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

# 8007. TO OBTAIN DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE

1. The purpose of this movement is to extend the interval between the individuals of a squad to a double arm distance. It may be executed when the squad is halted

at attention and in line at normal or close interval. If armed, rifles must be at sling arms. The command is "Take Interval to the Left, MARCH."

- 2. The squad leader is the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leader stands fast and raises his/her left arm to shoulder height, to provide interval for the persons on the left. At the same time, all other members of the squad face to the left as in marching, march toward the left flank until they have opened approximately a 70-inch distance from the person behind them, halt, and face to the right. They then smartly turn their heads to the right and raise both arms to shoulder height. Individuals on the left flank will only raise their right arm. After aligning and without command, they will smartly, and quietly, lower their right arms and turn their heads to the front as soon as they have proper interval. They will lower their left arms when they feel the individual to their left lower his/her right arm.
- 3. On his/her command of execution, the unit leader steps to the right in marching. He/she marches parallel to the squad maintaining a distance of 3 paces from the squad. When approximately on the center of the squad at double arms interval the unit leader halts and faces the squad. He/she then adjusts to the center of the squad by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

#### 8008. TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to decrease the interval between individuals of a squad in line from double arm to normal interval. It can only be executed when the squad is halted at attention and in line at a double-arm interval. The command is "Assemble to the Right, MARCH." On the command of execution, the interval is reduced in a manner similar to close march; except that individuals halt approximately 30 inches from each other, face and execute the appropriate dress movement to obtain normal interval.
- 2. On his/her command of execution, the unit leader steps to the left in marching. He/she marches parallel to the squad maintaining a distance of 3 paces from the squad. When approximately on the center of the squad at normal interval the unit leader halts and faces the squad. He/she then adjusts to the center of the squad by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

## 8009. TO FORM A COLUMN FROM IN LINE AND REFORM TO A LINE

- 1. When halted in line at normal interval and at the order if armed with rifles, the command to form a column is "Right, FACE." All members of the squad simultaneously face to the right, thereby forming column. The squad leader may then command "Right (Left) Shoulder, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" "Sling, ARMS;" or "Forward (Column {Half} Right/Left), MARCH" to cause the squad to march in column.
- NOTE: The squad becomes inverted if faced to the left, this should be done only for short movements. When it is desired to form a column facing to the left, the squad should first form column by facing to the right, then execute necessary successive column movements until the column is faced in the desired direction.
- 2. When in line at close interval, the squad is first extended to normal interval (see paragraph 8006), then forms column by facing to the right as described above.

3. When in column at a halt and at the order, to form a line, the command is "Left, FACE."

#### 8010. TO MARCH IN THE OBLIQUE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to shift the line of march to the right or left and then resume marching in the original direction. It may be executed from any formation that is marching at quick time cadence. The command is "Right (Left) Oblique, MARCH." The word oblique is pronounced to rhyme with strike. The command of execution is given as the foot in the direction of the turn strikes the deck. The command to resume the original direction of march is "Forward, MARCH." The command of execution is given as the foot toward the original front strikes the deck.
- 2. To teach the squad to march to the oblique, the unit leader aligns the unit and has members face half right (left). The unit leader then explains that these positions are maintained when marching to the oblique. This is achieved by individuals keeping their shoulders parallel to the persons in front and/or adjacent to them. The squad leader is the base of the movement, and must maintain a steady line of march keeping his/her shoulders blocked perpendicular to the direction of march.
- 3. At the command "Right Oblique, MARCH" the command of execution is given as the right foot strikes the deck. Everyone then takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the left foot and pivots 45 degrees to the right on the ball of the left foot. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire squad marches to the right oblique until given another command. (See figure 8-6.) For the squad to resume marching in the original direction, the command is "Forward, MARCH" in this case the command of execution will be given as the left foot strikes the deck. Everyone then takes one more step in the oblique direction; pivots back to the original front and continue to march. To march to the left oblique, substitute left for right and right for left in the above sequence.

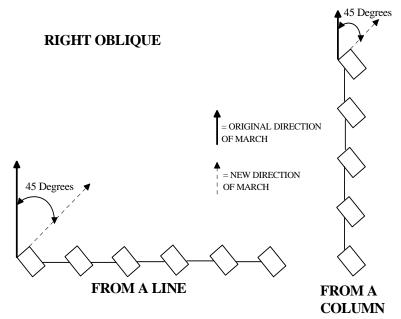


Figure 8-6.--Marching to Right Oblique.

- 4. To halt the squad facing in the original direction of march the command is "Squad, HALT." The command of execution "HALT" is given on the left foot when marching to the right oblique and on the right foot when marching to the left oblique. At the command "HALT," everyone takes one more step in the oblique direction, pivots to the original front on the toe of the right (left) foot, and places the left (right) foot beside the other at the position of attention.
- 5. To temporarily halt the squad in the oblique direction, in order to correct errors, the command is "In Place, HALT." The command of execution "HALT" may be given as either foot strikes the deck. At the command of execution "HALT," the squad halts in two counts as in quick time and remains facing in the oblique direction. The only command that can be given after halting in place is "Resume, MARCH." At that command, the movement continues marching in the oblique direction.
- 6. When given half step or mark time while marching in the oblique, the only commands that may be given are "Resume, MARCH" to continue marching with a 30-inch step in the oblique; or "In Place, HALT" to halt in the oblique in order to correct errors.

### 8011. TO MARCH TO THE REAR

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to march the squad to the rear for a short distance. It may be executed when halted or marching forward at quick time or double time. The command is "To the Rear, MARCH." The command of execution will be given as the right foot strikes the deck.
- 2. When halted, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes one 15-inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 180 degrees toward the right on the balls of both feet. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire squad marches to the rear. For the squad to resume marching in the original direction the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.
- 3. When marching at quick time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes one more 15 inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 180 degrees toward the right on the balls of both feet. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire squad marches to the rear. For the squad to resume marching in the original direction, the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.
- 4. When marching at double time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes two more 36-inch steps to the front and then four, 6-inch vertical steps in place at double time cadence. On the first and third steps in place, everyone pivots 180 degrees to the right. After the fourth step in place, and for the fifth step, they step off with a 36-inch step in the new direction. For the squad to resume marching in the original direction, the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.

## 8012. TO MARCH TO THE FLANK

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to march the squad to the right or left flank for a short distance. It may be executed from any formation that is marching at quick time or double time cadence. The command is "By the Right (Left) Flank, MARCH." The command of execution is given as the foot in the direction of the turn strikes the deck.
- 2. To march to the right flank, when marching at quick time, the command is "By the Right Flank, MARCH." On the command of execution "MARCH." everyone takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 90 degrees to the right on the ball of the left foot. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire squad marches in line to the right flank. The unit leader executes the flanking movement with the squad maintaining his/her distance from the squad. For the squad to resume marching in the original direction, the command is "By the Left Flank, MARCH." To march to the left flank, substitute left for right and right for left in the above sequence. No other command may be given when marching to the flank until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.
- 3. When marching at double time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes two more 36-inch steps to the front and then two, 6-inch vertical steps in place at double time cadence. While stepping in place, everyone turns 90 degrees toward the direction commanded and then steps off with a 36-inch step in the new direction. No other command may be given when marching to the flank until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.

## 8013. TO CHANGE DIRECTION OF A COLUMN

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to change the direction of march of a column. It may be executed when the squad is halted or marching in column. The command is "Column Right (Column Left, Column Half Right, or Column Half Left), MARCH." The squad leader establishes the pivot for the movement.
- 2. When marching, the commands of execution are given on the foot in the direction of the turn. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leader takes one more 30-inch step to the front and then pivots 90 degrees to the right (left) on the ball of the left (right) foot. He/she then takes a 30-inch step in the new direction. The remaining members of the squad continue to march to the point where the squad leader pivoted. They would then pivot 90 degrees in the new direction of march.
- 3. When halted, at the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leader faces to the right (left) as in marching and takes one 30-inch step in the new direction with the right (left) foot. The remaining members of the squad step off to the front as in forward march. The remainder of the movement is executed the same as in marching.
- 4. Column half right (left) is executed as described above except that the pivot is 45 degrees to the right (left).
- 5. During column movements, the unit leader executes the movement with the squad, maintaining proper distance from the squad.
- 6. For slight changes of direction, the command is "INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)."
  At that command, the squad leader changes direction slightly as commanded. This is not a precision movement and is executed only while marching.

# 8014. TO A FORM COLUMN OF TWOS FROM SINGLE FILE

- 1. When the squad is halted in column, the command is "Column of Twos to the Left (Right), MARCH."
- 2. If squad members do not already know whether they are an odd or even number, the squad must be given count off before the above command is given.
- 3. On "MARCH," the squad leader stands fast. Even-numbered squad members face half left (right) in marching, take two steps, face half right (left) in marching, and march forward to halt beside and at normal interval from the odd-numbered squad member who was originally in front of them. Odd numbered members, except the squad leader, march forward and halt as they attain a 40-inch distance from the odd-numbered member in front of them. All members required to move do so at the same time. (See figure 8-7.)

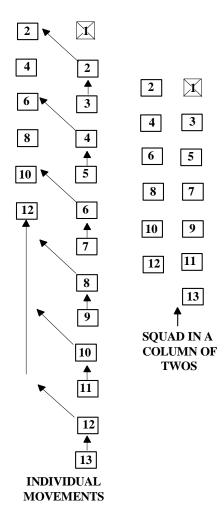


Figure 8-7.--Forming Column of Twos from Single File.

# 8015. TO FORM A SINGLE FILE FROM A COLUMN OF TWOS

- 1. When the squad is halted in column of twos, the command is "Column of Files from the Right (Left), MARCH." It is important to note, in order to keep from inverting the squad, that:
- a. If a column of twos was built TO the LEFT, then a column of files must be formed FROM the RIGHT.
- b. If a column of twos was built TO the RIGHT, then a column of files must be formed FROM the LEFT.
- 2. At the command "MARCH," number one and two members step off at the same time. Number 1 moves forward as number 2 steps half right in marching, moves 2 steps, faces half left in marching, and follows number 1 at a 40-inch distance. Remaining odd and even numbered members step off in pairs, execute the same movements as numbers one and two, and follow in file. (See figure 8-8.)
- a. When teaching this movement the unit leader should, after the command of execution "MARCH," begin calling a cadence of "and, STEP, and, STEP." For example, on the command of execution "MARCH," the number one and two squad members step off. On the first "and, STEP" the number three and four squad members step off. On the second "and, STEP" the number five and six squad members step off, etc. This cadence helps the squad member's step off at the correct time and keeps the squad in step.

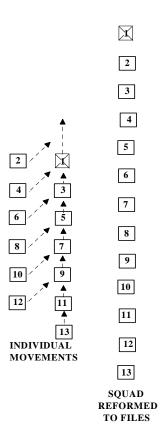


Figure 8-8.--Forming Single File from Column of Twos.

## 8016. TO STACK ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to temporarily relieve the squad of its weapons. It may be executed when the squad is halted in line. The command is "Stack, ARMS;" however, this command must be preceded by preliminary commands in order to prepare the squad to stack arms. Assuming the squad is halted in line at normal interval, the sequence of commands will be: "Count, OFF," "NUMBERS 3, 7 AND 11 ARE STACKMEN;" "Prepare, SLINGS;" and "Stack, ARMS."
- 2. On the command "Count, OFF," the squad counts off as prescribed in paragraph 8003.
- 3. Stackmen are designated by file number. The unit leader commands "NUMBERS 3, 7 AND 11 ARE STACKMEN." In other words the number 3, 7, and 11 persons in each squad are designated as stackmen. Additional stackmen may be designated if the squad has enough additional rifles to warrant it. The numbers 3, 7, and 11 are used to preserve fire team integrity for each weapons stack. If the squad is not divided into fire teams, numbers 2, 5, 8, and 11 may be designated stackmen. This reduces the number of extra weapons that must be added to the stacks.
- 4. On the command "Prepare, SLINGS," the designated stackmen place the butt of their rifles on their right hip and cradle them in the crook of their right arm. They then adjust their slings to form a 4-inch loop next to upper sling swivel. As soon as they have prepared the loop, they return to order arms.
- 5. On the command "Stack, ARMS," the designated stackmen place their weapons directly in front of and centered on their bodies with the sights to the rear. The heel of the rifle butt is placed on the ground on line with the toes of their shoes. Each stackman grasps the rifle at the upper portion of the handguard with the left hand, keeping the rifle vertical. The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. The stackman reaches across the front of the rifle with the right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop and holds it open for insertion of the rifles. (See figure 8-9.) At the same time, the individuals to the left and right of the stackmen perform the following movements simultaneously:
- a. The individuals on the stackmen's right raise and center their weapons by bringing their right wrist to shoulder height and centered on their bodies, magazine well facing the front. They then grasp the handguards (midway) with the left hand, sling included in the grasp, release the right hand, and re-grasp the weapon at the small of the stock. Arms are then lowered to a dead hang, so that the weapons are held in a horizontal position with the muzzles to the left and magazine wells still to the front. (See figure 8-9.)
- b. The individuals on the stackmen's left raise and center their weapons by bringing their right wrists to shoulder height and centered on their bodies, magazine wells face the front. They then grasp their weapons at the small of the stock with their left hands, sling included in the grasp, release their right hands and re-grasp the handguards (midway). Arms are lowered to a dead hang, so that the weapons are held in a horizontal position with the muzzles to the right and the magazine wells still to the front. (See figure 8-9.)



Figure 8-9.--Positions of Stackmen and Individuals to the Right and Left at the End of the First Step in Stack Arms.

c. As soon as the stackmen have placed their rifles in position, both the individuals to the right and left move their feet nearest the stackmen, 18 inches in the oblique toward the stackmen. The individuals on the stackmen's left insert the muzzles of their rifles into the loops to a point approximately halfway between the compensator and the front sight. They hold their weapons in this position until the individuals on the stackmen's right insert the muzzles of their rifles in a similar manner, but above the other rifle in each loop. (See figure 8-10.)



Figure 8-10.--Inserting Rifles Into the Stackmen's Sling Loop.

d. The butts of the rifles inserted into the loops are swung outward and down to the ground until the stacks are tight with the rifle butts on line and approximately 2 feet forward of the stackmen's rifle. The rifles rest on the side of the butts with the pistol grips pointing inboard toward each other. As each stack is completed, all three individuals stand up at the same time and resume the position of attention. (See figure 8-11.)



Figure 8-11.--Final Position of Stack Arms.

e. Extra rifles are passed to the nearest stacks on the right. Individuals holding extra rifles grasp the barrels of their rifle raise them vertically and then extend their right arms horizontally to the right front. The persons to the right grasp the weapons at the handguard, center them on their bodies grasp the barrels with their right hands and extend their right arms horizontally to the right front. This action is repeated until the rifles reach the stackmen. The stackmen lean the rifles against the center of the stacks in such a manner as to prevent them from falling or knocking the stacks over. The squad leader passes his/her rifle to the first stack on his/her left by raising the weapon with the right hand to a position centered on the body as in the first count of present arms from order arms figure 3-15b. He/she then grasps the weapon with the left hand at the handguards; sling included in the grasp, and passes the weapon to the left by extending the left arm horizontally to the left front. The individual to the squad leaders left then grasps the rifle at the barrel with the right hand, centers it on the body grasps the handguards with the left hand and passes it to the stackman.

## 8017. TO TAKE ARMS

1. The purpose of this movement is to recover arms that have been stacked. It may be executed only when the squad has fallen back in on the weapons stacks. The command is "Take, ARMS."

2. On the command of execution "ARMS," if there are extra arms they are passed back in a reverse manner of the way they were passed to the stacks. When extra arms have been passed back, or if there were no extra arms, the stackmen grasp their rifles and hold the loops in the same manner as was done for stacking arms. The individuals to the left and right step in the oblique reach down and re-grasp their weapons and bring them to a horizontal position. The individual on the right removes his/her rifle first and resumes order arms or unsling arms. The individual on the left removes his/her weapon and resumes order arms or unsling arms. The stackman cradles his/her weapon and adjusts the sling and sling keeper to its original position and then resumes the order or unsling arms position.

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 9

# PLATOON DRILL

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	9000	9-3
FORMATIONS	9001	9-3
POSTS OF INDIVIDUALS	9002	9-5
RULES FOR THE GUIDE	9003	9-5
TO FORM THE PLATOON	9004	9-6
TO DISMISS THE PLATOON	9005	9-7
TO COUNT OFF	9006	9-8
TO FORM COLUMN FROM LINE	9007	9-8
TO FORM LINE FROM COLUMN	9008	9-8
TO ALIGN THE PLATOON	9009	9-9
TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL FROM NORMAL INTERVAL IN LINE	9010	9-11
TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM CLOSE INTERVAL IN LINE	9011	9-12
TO OBTAIN DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE	9012	9-12
TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL	9013	9-13
TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL IN COLUMN	9014	9-13
TO EXTEND TO NORMAL INTERVAL IN COLUMN	9015	9-15
TO OPEN RANKS	9016	9-15
TO CLOSE RANKS	9017	9-16
TO STACK ARMS	9018	9-17
TO TAKE ARMS	9019	9-18
TO FORM FOR PHYSICAL DRILL	9020	9-19
TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF A COLUMN	9021	9-20
TO MARCH TO THE FLANK	9022	9-21

		PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
TO MARC	H IN THE OBLIQUE	9023	9-23
TO MARCI	H TO THE REAR	9024	9-24
TO FORM	A COLUMN OF TWOS OR FILES AND REFORM	9025	9-25
	FIGURE		
9-1	PLATOON IN LINE AT NORMAL INTERVAL		9-4
9-2	PLATOON IN COLUMN AT NORMAL INTERVAL		9-4
9-3	MOVEMENTS OF THE PLATOON COMMANDER WHEN ALIGNING THE PLATOON		9-10
9-4	CLOSE MARCH (WHILE MARCHING), RIGHT SQUAD BASE		9-14
9-5	EXECUTING COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT)		9-21
9-6	RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK		9-22
9-7	MARCHING TO RIGHT OBLIQUE		9-23
9-8	COLUMN OF TWOS FROM COLUMN OF THREES AND REFORM		9-26
9-9	COLUMN OF TWOS FROM COLUMN OF FOURS AND REFORM		9-28
9_10	COLUMN OF FILES FROM COLUMN OF THREES AND REFORM		9-30

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 9

#### PLATOON DRILL

## 9000. GENERAL

- 1. The first phase of drill has been explained in earlier chapters of this Manual. This Chapter discusses the next phase, platoon drill. In platoon drill, the squad is merged with other squads into a platoon.
- 2. A platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and two or more squads or sections. Platoon headquarters consists at a minimum of a platoon commander, a platoon sergeant and a platoon guide. One or more assistants may be designated.
- 3. A section normally forms and drills as part of a platoon. In this Manual, the instructions given for the squad or platoon also apply to a section. A section, not subdivided into squads, forms and drills as a squad. A section that is divided into two or more squads forms and drills as a platoon.
- 4. Squads in a platoon are numbered from front to rear in column (when facing the front of the column) and from right to left in line.
- 5. The platoon forms in two or more ranks with a 40-inch distance between ranks. Movements in this Section are described for columns of threes or fours and may be executed by either formation.
- 6. The platoon changes interval while in line and counts off in the same manner as the squad. Squad leaders are the base for these movements. The guide moves to the right when interval is taken to the left, and does not count off.
- 7. In platoon drill, if all members of the platoon are to execute a movement simultaneously, the movement is executed on the command of the platoon commander. In this case, squad leaders do not repeat or give any commands. When squads of the platoon are to execute a movement in successive order, such as forming column of twos (files) and reforming into column (of threes, etc.), squad leaders give appropriate supplemental commands for the movement of their squads.
- 8. Unless specified for the platoon to be at close interval, all changes in formation should be executed with normal interval and distance between files and ranks
- 9. The unit leader will march to the left and parallel to the platoon, from a position where he/she can best control the unit.
- 10. All commands given by the unit leader while the platoon is halted will be 6 paces in front of the unit and centered on the element.

## 9001. FORMATIONS

1. Column and line are the two formations for a platoon. (See figures 9-1 and 9-2.)

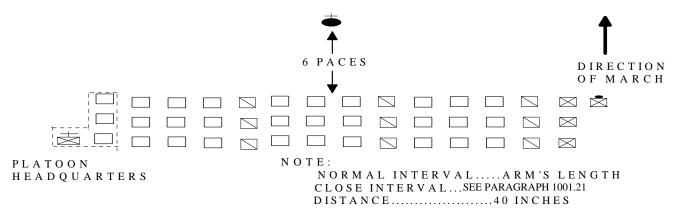


Figure 9-1.--Platoon in Line at Normal Interval.

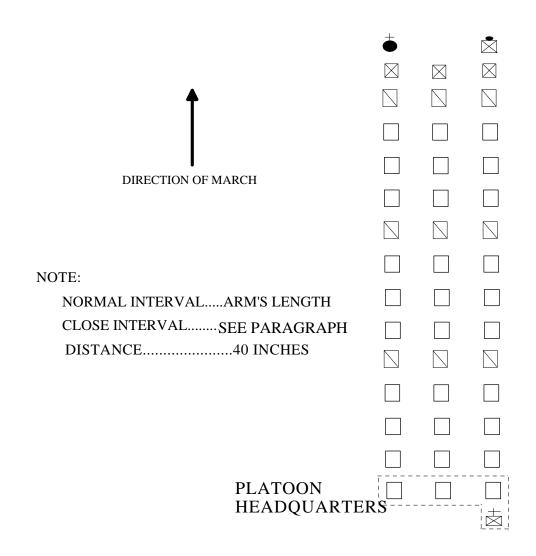


Figure 9-2.--Platoon in Column at Normal Interval.

2. The platoon normally forms in line with the squad leaders on the right of their squads and the guide on the right of the first squad leader. (See figure 9-1.) The platoon marches in line for short distances only. The platoon is normally marched in column with the squad leaders in front of their squads and the guide in front of the third (right) squad leader. (See figure 9-2.)

## 9002. POSTS OF INDIVIDUALS

- 1. In line, the platoon commander's post is 6 paces in front of the center of the front rank of the platoon. (See figure 9-1.) In column, the platoon commander marches at the head of the left file of the platoon (see figure 9-2), unless drilling the platoon, in which case he/she would maintain a position 6 paces from the platoon.
- 2. When the platoon commander is present, the platoon sergeant takes post to the left of the left member of the rear rank when the platoon is in line. When in column, the platoon sergeant follows the last member of the right file (squad). When the platoon commander is not present, the platoon sergeant takes the platoon commander's post and drills the platoon in the manner prescribed for the platoon commander.
- 3. The platoon guide takes post as stated in paragraph 9003.
- 4. Extra members may fall in on the left when the platoon is in line and in the rear when in column. If the squads are evenly filled, the first extra member falls in with the first squad, the second with the third (fourth) squad and then remaining squads. The platoon sergeant will reposition when necessary so as to remain the last person in the last rank.
- 5. In this Chapter the term "platoon commander," e.g., the platoon commander then checks the alignment, means the individual drilling the platoon. He/she may be the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, or platoon member drilling the platoon for an inspection or evaluation. Except when marching at the head of a platoon column, the platoon commander must maintain proper distance (6 paces) from the platoon and remain centered on the platoon during all drill movements.
- a. If the platoon were executing a right step, the platoon commander, who is facing the platoon, would execute a left step in cadence with the platoon in order to maintain proper position. For a left step the platoon commander would execute a right step.
- b. If the platoon were executing a back step, the platoon commander would execute a half step, in cadence with the platoon in order to maintain proper position.
- c. Movements of the platoon commander during other platoon movements are explained in the paragraph describing the movement.

## 9003. RULES FOR THE GUIDE

1. Unless otherwise directed, guide is right and the platoon guide takes post on the right. In line, the guide is posted to the right of the squad leader of the first squad. In column, the guide is posted in front of the squad leader of the third or right squad.

- 2. In column, when it is desired to guide left or center, the command "GUIDE LEFT" is given. At this command, the guide and the platoon commander exchange positions. The guide crosses between the platoon commander and the platoon. To return the guide to normal position, "GUIDE RIGHT" is commanded. The guide and platoon commander return to their normal positions with the guide again passing between the platoon commander and the platoon. This movement may be made at a halt or while marching. The base squad or file is the one behind the guide.
- 3. The guide does not change position at the command "Dress Left, DRESS."
- 4. When a platoon in line is given the command "Right, FACE," the platoon guide executes right face with the platoon. The guide then faces to the right in marching, moves to a position in front of the right squad leader, halts, and executes left face. If a platoon in line is given "Left, FACE," the guide executes left face with the platoon but does not change position within the platoon.
- 5. When a platoon in column is given the command "Column of Files from the Left," the guide takes position in front of the left squad leader so as to remain at the head of the column.
- 6. When a platoon in column is given the command "Column of Twos from the Left," the guide takes position in front of the second squad so as to remain at the head of the right file of the column. These movements are executed by facing left as in marching, moving to the appropriate position, halting, and facing right.
- 7. When reforming in a column of threes or fours from a column of files or twos, the guide takes post at his normal position when the movement is completed.
- 8. The guide sets the direction and cadence of the march. The leading member of each file is responsible for interval.
- 9. When a platoon is marching in column and the command "By the Right (Left) Flank, MARCH" or "To the Rear, MARCH" is given, the guide executes the movement with the platoon but does not change relative position except during specific movements of company drill. (See paragraph 10011 for an exception.)
- 10. The quide does not count off.

# 9004. TO FORM THE PLATOON

1. The platoon forms in line at normal interval and distance between files and ranks (see figure 9-1) on the command "FALL IN." To form at close interval, the command is "At Close Interval, FALL IN," in which case the platoon forms in line with normal distance between ranks, but with close interval between files. The platoon sergeant or platoon commander forms the platoon as described below.

# 2. Forming the Platoon by the Platoon Sergeant

a. The platoon sergeant takes post 3 paces in front of the point where the center of the platoon will be, faces that point, draws sword if so armed, and commands either "FALL IN" or "At Close Interval, "FALL IN." At this command, the guide takes post so that the first rank, when aligned on the guide will be centered on and 3 paces from the platoon sergeant. The squad leader of the first squad

falls in to the left of the guide and aligns at normal or close interval. Other squad leaders fall in directly behind the squad leader of the first squad with 40 inches distance between them. The members of the squads fall in and align on their squad leaders at normal or close interval as prescribed in squad drill, except that exact interval is measured only by the front rank. Individuals in the rear ranks gain their interval by covering the corresponding member of the rank in front of them. All personnel fall in at attention and, if armed with the rifle, at the position of order arms.

- b. When a report is appropriate, after all personnel are formed, the platoon sergeant commands, "REPORT." Remaining in position (at order arms if armed with the rifle), the squad leaders, in sequence from front to rear, salute and report, "All present" or "(Rank and Name) absent." If the troops are armed, the platoon sergeant commands, "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "Order, ARMS." The platoon sergeant then executes about face. (NOTE: If the platoon cannot be formed in regularly organized squads prior to forming the platoon, the platoon sergeant commands "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" "Right Shoulder, ARMS;" and calls the roll. Each Marine answers "here," and goes to order arms as their name is called. The platoon sergeant then organizes the platoon into squads and faces the front. The manual of arms is omitted for personnel not armed with rifles.)
- c. To receive the platoon, the platoon commander takes post 3 paces in front of the platoon sergeant (sword in scabbard if so armed), the platoon sergeant salutes and reports, "Sir (Ma'am), all present or accounted for" or "Sir (Ma'am), (number) absent." The platoon commander returns the salute and may discuss absentees and issue necessary instructions to the platoon sergeant. The platoon commander then commands the platoon sergeant, "TAKE YOUR POST." The platoon sergeant marches by the most direct route to a post on the left of the rear rank. The platoon commander then draws sword, if so armed.
- d. If the platoon commander does not receive the platoon, the platoon sergeant takes 3 paces forward, faces about and assumes the post and duties of the platoon commander.

#### 3. Forming the Platoon by the Platoon Commander

- a. When appropriate, the platoon may be formed by the platoon commander rather than the platoon sergeant. The procedures are the same except that the platoon commander takes post 6 paces in front of the point where the center of the platoon will be, faces that point, draws sword and commands "FALL IN" or "At Close Interval, FALL IN."
- b. The platoon forms on the platoon commander, the platoon sergeant falling in on the left of the rear rank with sword drawn, if so armed. The platoon commander then receives the report from the squad leaders and causes the platoon to execute inspection arms if the troops are armed.

# 9005. TO DISMISS THE PLATOON

- 1. The platoon is dismissed only from in line while at attention.
- 2. Armed troops are dismissed with the commands "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "DISMISSED."
- 3. Unarmed troops are dismissed with the command "DISMISSED."

4. The platoon sergeant usually dismisses the platoon.

# 9006. COUNT OFF

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to designate the relative position in ranks of each member of the platoon. It may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention in line or column. When in line the command is "Count, OFF;" when in column the command is "From Front to Rear, Count, OFF."
- 2. In line, on the command "Count, OFF," everyone except the guide and squad leaders turn their heads 90 degrees to the right and look to the right. The squad leaders shout ONE. The persons in the file to the left of the squad leaders turn their heads smartly back to the front and at the same time shout TWO. After the file to their right has shouted its number, each subsequent file to the left turn their heads back to the front and shouts the next higher number. Numbers are counted off in quick time cadence.
- 3. In column, on the command **"From Front to Rear, Count, OFF,"** the squad leaders smartly turn their heads to the right and shout ONE as they return their heads back to the front. Each subsequent rank, having seen the heads in front of them return to the front, turn their heads to the right and shout the next higher number as they bring their heads smartly back to the front. This is carried on in sequence at quick time cadence. The guide does not turn his/her head nor count off. The platoon commander gives the command from a position 6 paces in front and centered on the squad leaders.
- TO FORM COLUMN FROM LINE. The purpose of this movement is to change the formation from line to column. It may be executed only when halted at normal interval, at attention, and at order arms if armed with rifles. The command is "Right, FACE." On the command of execution "FACE," all members of the platoon face to the right, thereby forming column. The guide moves to his/her position in front of the right squad leader. The platoon commander may then command any halted movement from his/her current position, (e.g., right/left shoulder, port, sling, arms; facing movements, right/left step; etc.) unless otherwise indicated in this Chapter. If the platoon is to march as part of a larger formation the platoon commander takes post in front of the left file and the guide in front of the right file. (See figure 9-2.) From this position the platoon commander would command "Forward (Column Right {Left}), MARCH" to cause the platoon to march in column. (NOTE: Since the platoon becomes inverted if faced to the left, this should only be done for short adjusting movements. To properly form column facing to the left, the platoon should first form column by facing to the right, then execute successive column movements until the column is faced in the desired direction.)
- 9008. TO FORM LINE FROM COLUMN. The purpose of this movement is to change the formation from a column back to a line. It may be executed when halted at attention and at order arms if armed with rifles. The command is "Left, FACE." (NOTE: If the platoon is in column at close interval they must be extended to normal interval, paragraph 9015, prior to executing left face. Otherwise there will not be 40 inches distance between ranks.) At the command of execution "FACE," all members of the platoon face to the left, the platoon commander, if necessary, moves by the most direct route to a post 6 paces front and center of the platoon, and the platoon guide takes post on the right of the front rank. (NOTE: When in column, if the platoon is faced to the right it becomes inverted. This should only be done for short adjusting movements.)

## 9009. TO ALIGN THE PLATOON

1. The purpose of these movements is to dress the alignment of the platoon. They may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention in line or column. When in line, the commands are "Dress Right (Left), DRESS" or "At Close Interval, Dress Right (Left), DRESS." These commands are given only when the platoon is at approximately the same interval as the interval at which the dress is commanded. When in column, halted or marching, the command to dress alignment is "COVER."

# 2. Dress Right Dress

- a. On the command "Dress Right, DRESS," everyone except those individuals on the right flank, smartly turn their heads to the right, look, and align themselves. At the same time, everyone except those individuals on the left flank, provide interval by smartly raising their extended left arm to shoulder height and in line with their body. Fingers are extended and joined, thumb along the forefinger, palm down.
- b. As the base of the movement, the guide stands fast and remains looking to the front. The first squad leader looks to the right and aligns on the guide. The other squad leaders cover the first squad leader and look to the front, ensuring they have a 40-inch distance. All other members position themselves by short steps until their right shoulders touch the fingertips of the person on their right.
- c. The platoon commander, on his/her own command of execution "DRESS," faces half left, as in marching, and proceeds by the most direct route to a position on line with the front rank and 1 pace to the guide's right (or first squad leader if there is no guide). (See figure 9-3a.) At this position, the platoon commander executes a halt while facing rear, and then executes a right face, facing down the line of the first rank. (See figure 9-3b.) The platoon commander aligns the front rank by commanding those individuals in advance or rear of the line to move forward or backward until in line. These individuals are designated by name or number. For example: "Jones, FORWARD;" or "Number Three, BACKWARDS." Those commanded to move will move the designated number of steps or will continue to move (taking small steps) until receiving the command "STEADY." The commander may execute a series of short side steps to the right or left in order to identify an individual. However, prior to commanding the identified individual to move, the commander will be on line with the rank. After verifying the alignment of the first rank, the platoon commander faces to the left as in marching, and moves to a position on line with the next rank. The 1 pace interval from the guide is maintained (this results in a 2 pace interval from the second and subsequent squad leaders). The commander halts on line with each succeeding rank, executes right face, and aligns the rank. (See figures 9-3c and d.) After verifying the alignment of the last rank, the platoon commander faces to the right in marching, marches straight to a point 3 paces beyond the front rank, maintaining the 1 pace interval to the guide's right, halts, (see figure 9-3e) faces to the left, (see figure 9-3f) and commands "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER." Immediately after commanding, "COVER," the platoon commander marches by the most direct route back to a post 6 paces front and centered on the platoon, halts facing down line or to the front.
- d. On the command **"Ready, FRONT,"** all members of the platoon who raised their left arm and turned their head to the right, will smartly but quietly lower their arm to their side and at the same time turn their head back to the front, assuming the position of attention. On the command **"COVER,"** all members of the second and subsequent ranks will cover on the individual in front of them.

e. When aligning a platoon of well-drilled troops or when there is insufficient time to verify alignment, the platoon commander may command "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER" from his/her normal position (6 paces front and centered), without having verified alignment.

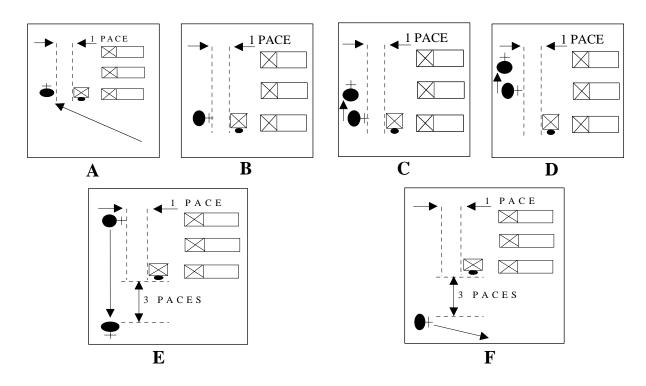


Figure 9-3.--Movements of the Platoon Commander when Aligning the Platoon.

- 3. At Close Interval Dress Right Dress. This movement is executed in the same manner as dress right dress except for the following: On the command "At Close Interval, Dress Right, DRESS," those individuals providing interval will do so by placing the heel of their left hand on their hip with the elbow in line with their body. Fingers are extended and joined and pointing down. Members gaining interval will move by short steps until their right arm is touching the left elbow of the individual to their right.
- 4. Dress Left Dress and at Close Interval Dress Left Dress. These movements are similar to dress right dress and at close interval dress right dress except that alignment is made toward the left. The last individual in the first rank is the base of the movement and stands fast. On the command "Dress Left, DRESS," or "At Close Interval, Dress Left, DRESS," everyone except those on the left flank smartly turn their heads to the left, look, and align themselves. At the same time they will smartly raise their left arm or elbow to provide interval (the left arm is used for both dress right and dress left). The last individuals in the second and subsequent ranks will cover the person in front of them and ensure that they have a 40-inch distance. The platoon commander will verify alignment of the platoon from its left flank.

## 5. Aligning in Column

- a. The base squad for maintaining alignment while halted or marching in column is normally the third (right) squad. However, when executing a column left, column half left or eyes left alignment is to the first (left) squad. While marching, alignment is maintained by constantly glancing out of the corner of the right (left) eye, without turning the head.
- b. <u>Halted</u>. When halted in column, (except for parades and ceremonies) the platoon is aligned by the command "COVER." At the command, the base squad leader obtains a 40-inch distance from the guide and covers on him/her. Other squad leaders obtain proper interval from the base squad leader and align toward the base by glancing out of the corner of their right (left) eye without turning their heads. Other members of the base squad obtain a 40-inch distance and covers on the person in front of them. At the same time, the remaining members of the platoon align on the base squad, by glancing out of the corner of their right (left) eye without turning the head and covers on the person in front of them. Only small adjusting steps are taken by platoon members to gain cover and alignment.
- c. <u>Marching</u>. While marching, cover and alignment are constantly maintained by glancing out of the corner of the right (left) eye, without turning the head, to align on the base squad. The command of **"COVER"** is only given if required.

## 9010. TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL FROM NORMAL INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to close the interval between files of a platoon in line to 4 inches. It may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention and in line at normal interval. The command is "Close, MARCH."
- 2. The squad leaders are the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leaders stand fast and place their left hand on their hip to provide interval for the individuals to their left. At the same time, all other members of the platoon, except for the guide, face to the right as in marching, march toward the right flank until approximately 4 inches from the person in front of them, halt, and face to the left. They then execute at close interval dress right dress. After aligning and without command, they will smartly lower their left hands and turn their heads to the front as soon as the individual to their left has touched their elbow with his/her right arm and stopped moving. Cover is then obtained without command.
- 3. On the command of execution, the guide will step to the left as in marching and close to 4 inches on the first squad leader. After halting and facing to the right, the guide will execute at close interval dress left dress. When aligned and at the proper interval the guide will return to the position of attention.
- 4. The platoon commander on his/her own command of execution "MARCH" will step to the left in marching. He/she marches parallel to the platoon maintaining a distance of 6 paces from the platoon. When approximately on the center of the platoon at close interval the platoon commander halts and faces the platoon. The platoon commander then adjusts to the center of the platoon by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

## 9011. TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM CLOSE INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to extend the interval between files of a platoon in line to one arm length. It may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention and in line at close interval. The command is "Extend, MARCH."
- 2. The squad leaders are the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leaders stand fast and raise their left arms to shoulder height to provide interval for the persons on their left. At the same time, all other members of the platoon, except for the guide, face to the left as in marching, march toward the left flank until they have opened approximately a 30-inch distance from the person behind them, halt, and face to the right. They then execute dress right dress. After aligning and without command, they will smartly lower their left arms and turn their heads to the front as soon as the individual to their left has touched their finger tips with his/her right shoulder and stopped moving. Cover is then obtained without command.
- 3. On the command of execution, the guide will take one step to the right as in marching, halt and face to the left. The guide will then execute dress left dress. When aligned on the first squad leader and at the proper interval the guide will return to the position of attention.
- 4. The platoon commander on his/her own command of execution "MARCH" will step to the right in marching. He/she marches parallel to the platoon maintaining a distance of 6 paces from the platoon. When approximately on the center of the platoon at normal interval the platoon commander halts and faces the platoon. The platoon commander then adjusts to the center of the platoon by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

## 9012. TO OBTAIN DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL IN LINE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to extend the interval between the files of a platoon to a double arm distance. It may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention and in line at normal or close interval. If armed, rifles must be at sling arms. The command is "Take Interval to the Left, MARCH."
- 2. The squad leaders are the base of this movement. On the command of execution "MARCH," the squad leaders stand fast and raise their left arms to shoulder height, to provide interval for the persons on their left. The first squad leader will also raise his/her right arm to provide interval for the guide. At the same time, all other members of the platoon, except for the guide, face to the left as in marching, march toward the left flank until they have opened approximately a 70-inch distance from the person behind them, halt, and face to the right. They then smartly turn their heads to the right and raise both arms to shoulder height. Individuals on the left flank will only raise their right arm. After aligning and without command, they will smartly lower their right arms and turn their heads to the front as soon as they have proper interval. They will lower their left arms when they feel the individual to their left lower his/her right arm. Cover is then obtained without command.
- 3. On the command of execution, the guide will take two steps to the right as in marching, halt and face to the left. The guide will then execute dress left dress. When aligned on the first squad leader and at the proper interval, the guide will return to the position of attention. When the first squad leader feels the guide lower his/her left arm, the squad leader will lower his/her right arm.

4. The platoon commander on his/her own command of execution "MARCH" will step to the right in marching. He/she marches parallel to the platoon maintaining a distance of 6 paces from the platoon. When approximately on the center of the platoon at double arm interval the platoon commander halts and faces the platoon. The platoon commander then adjusts to the center of the platoon by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

# 9013. TO OBTAIN NORMAL INTERVAL FROM DOUBLE ARM INTERVAL

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to decrease the interval between files of a platoon in line from double arm to normal interval. It can only be executed when the platoon is halted at attention and in line at a double arm interval. The command is "Assemble to the Right, MARCH." On the command of execution, the interval is reduced in a manner similar to close march; except that individuals halt approximately 30 inches from each other, face and execute the appropriate dress movement to obtain normal interval.
- 2. The platoon commander on his/her own command of execution "MARCH" will step to the left in marching. He/she marches parallel to the platoon maintaining a distance of 6 paces from the platoon. When approximately on the center of the platoon at normal interval the platoon commander halts and faces the platoon. The platoon commander then adjusts to the center of the platoon by taking small steps left, right, forward or back.

#### 9014. TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL IN COLUMN

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to close the interval between files in a column to 4 inches. It may be executed when halted or marching at normal interval in column. The command is "Close, MARCH."
- 2. When halted and the guide is right, on the command "MARCH," members of the base (right) squad will stand fast. Members of the squad next to the base squad will execute two right steps. The next squad to the left will execute four right steps. If there are four squads in the platoon, the first (left) squad will execute six right steps. While side stepping, cover and alignment will be maintained. Steps may be adjusted slightly so that a 4-inch interval is obtained. Upon completion of the designated number of steps, members of the squad will halt and resume the position of attention.
- 3. When marching and the guide is right, the command of execution "MARCH" is given as the right foot strikes the deck. At this command:
- a. The base (right) squad takes one more 30-inch step with the left foot and then begins to half step. (See figure 9-4.)
- b. The squad to the left of the base squad takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the left foot; execute right oblique toward the base squad for one step and then steps 30 inches back to the original front. The squad then begins to half step.
- c. The next squad to the left takes one more 30-inch step to the front and then executes right oblique toward the base squad for three steps and steps 30 inches back to the original front. The squad then begins to half step.

- d. If there are four squads in the platoon, the first (left) squad would execute the same movements as above except the members would take five steps in the oblique.
- e. Steps in the oblique may be adjusted slightly so that a 4-inch interval is obtained.
  - f. At the command "Forward, MARCH" all squads resume taking 30-inch steps.
- 4. If the guide has been shifted to the left or center, the base squad will become the squad behind the guide. The commands of execution will be given as the left foot strikes the deck, if guide is left, or on either foot if guide is center. Side steps or oblique movements will be made toward the base squad as appropriate.
- 5. The platoon commander, on his/her command "MARCH," oblique the number of steps necessary to remain parallel to the platoon and picks up the half step. The platoon commander picks up a full 30-inch step on his/her command of "Forward, MARCH."

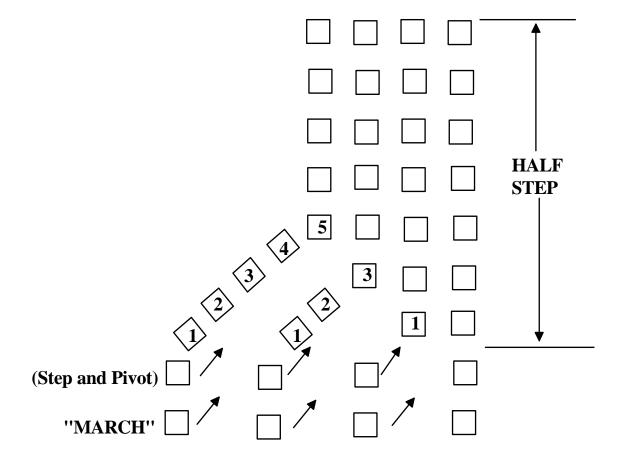


Figure 9-4.--Close March (While Marching), Right Squad Base.

## 9015. TO EXTEND TO NORMAL INTERVAL IN COLUMN

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to extend the interval between files in a column from close to normal interval. It may be executed when halted or marching in column at close interval. The command is "Extend, MARCH."
- 2. When halted and the guide is right, on the command of execution "MARCH," members of the base (right) squad stand fast. Members of the squad next to the base squad will execute two left steps. The next squad to the left will execute four left steps. If there are four squads in the platoon, the first (left) squad will execute six left steps. While side stepping, cover and alignment will be maintained. Steps may be adjusted slightly so that one arms interval is obtained between squad leaders. Upon completion of the designated number of steps, members of the squad will halt and resume the position of attention.
- 3. When marching and the guide is right, the command of execution "MARCH" is given as the left foot strikes the deck. At this command:
- a. The base (right) squad takes one more 30-inch step with the right foot and then begins to half step.
- b. The squad next to the base squad takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the right foot, executes left oblique away from the base squad for one step and steps 30 inches back to the original front. The squad then begins to half step.
- c. The next squad to the left takes one more 30-inch step to the front and then executes left oblique away from the base squad for three steps and steps 30 inches back to the original front. The squad then begins to half step.
- d. If there are four squads in the platoon, the first (left) squad would execute the same movements as above except the members would take five steps in the oblique.
- e. Steps in the oblique may be adjusted slightly so that a one-arm interval is obtained between squad leaders.
  - f. At the command "Forward, MARCH," all squads resume taking 30-inch steps.
- 4. If the guide has been shifted to the left or center, the base squad will become the squad behind the guide. Side steps or oblique movements will then be made away from the base squad as appropriate.
- 5. The platoon commander, on his/her command "MARCH," oblique the number of steps necessary to remain 6 paces from the platoon and picks up the half step. The platoon commander picks up a full 30-inch step on his/her command of "Forward, MARCH."

## 9016. TO OPEN RANKS

1. The purpose of this movement is to increase the distance between ranks to 70 inches in order to accommodate the movements of an inspection party or to stack arms. It may be executed when halted in line at attention, and at normal or close interval. If armed, rifles will be at order arms. The commands are "At Close Interval, Open Rank," "MARCH;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER."

- 2. When at normal interval, on the command of execution "MARCH," the front rank takes two 30-inch steps forward, halts, and executes dress right dress. The second rank takes one 30-inch step forward, halts, and executes dress right dress. The third rank stands fast and executes dress right. If there is a fourth rank, it takes two 15-inch back steps, halts, and executes dress right. When at close interval, all ranks will execute at close interval, dress right dress in place of dress right dress.
- 3. The platoon commander verifies alignment as for dress right dress, except that he/she will verify the 70-inch distance between ranks by taking two 30-inch steps and one 10-inch step when moving from one rank to the next. After verifying the alignment of the rear rank, he/she faces to the right in marching, marches 3 paces beyond the front rank, and 1 pace to the guide's right, halts, faces to the left, and commands "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER." The platoon responds to these commands in the same manner as when they are given following dress right dress.
- a. If the platoon is about to be inspected the platoon commander, after the command "COVER" will take one step to the front so that he/she is 3 paces directly in front of the guide, and then execute a right face. From this position the platoon commander reports the platoon to the inspecting officer.
- b. If the platoon is to stack arms, the platoon commander, on his/her command "COVER" will return by the most direct route to post 6 paces and centered in front of the platoon. The commands for stack arms would then be given, paragraph 9018.

#### 9017. TO CLOSE RANKS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to decrease the distance between opened ranks to a normal distance (40 inches). It may only be given when the platoon is at attention at open ranks. The command is "Close Ranks, MARCH." It should be given immediately after the reason for opening ranks is accomplished, and before the platoon is given further drill movements or dismissed.
- 2. On the command of execution "MARCH," the front rank stands fast while the second rank takes one 30-inch step to the front and halts. At the same time, the third rank takes two 30-inch steps to the front and if there is a fourth squad, it takes 3 steps and halts. Each individual maintains cover and alignment while moving. No dressing movements are executed.
- 3. The platoon commander may give the command to close ranks when:
- a. After the platoon is inspected, the platoon commander returns to a position 3 paces in front of the guide and halts facing to the front. It is from this position that the inspecting officer would critique the inspection. The platoon commander would exchange salutes with the inspection officer and after that officer has departed, the platoon commander would face to the left and then command "Close Ranks, MARCH." The platoon commander, on the command "MARCH," then moves to his/her position 6 paces and centered on the platoon.
- b. After the platoon has taken arms, paragraph 9019, the platoon commander would command, "Close Ranks, MARCH" from his/her position 6 paces and centered in front of the platoon.

## 9018. TO STACK ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to temporarily relieve the platoon of its weapons. It may be executed when the platoon is halted in line. The command is "Stack, ARMS;" however, this command must be preceded by preliminary commands in order to prepare the platoon to stack arms. Assuming the platoon is halted in line at normal interval, the sequence of commands will be "Count, OFF," "NUMBERS 3, 7, AND 11 ARE STACKMEN;" "Prepare, SLINGS;" "Open Ranks, MARCH;" "Ready, FRONT;" "COVER;" and then "Stack, ARMS."
- 2. On the command "Count, OFF," the platoon counts off as prescribed in paragraph 9006.
- 3. Stackmen are designated by file number with the command, "NUMBERS 3, 7, AND 11 ARE STACKMEN." In other words the number 3, 7, and 11 persons in each squad are designated as stackmen. Additional stackmen may be designated if the platoon has enough additional rifles to warrant it. The numbers 3, 7, and 11 are used to preserve fire team integrity for each weapons stack. If the squads are not divided into fire teams, numbers 2, 5, 8, and 11 may be designated stackmen. This reduces the number of extra weapons that must be added to the stacks.
- 4. On the command "Prepare, SLINGS," the designated stackmen place the butt of their rifles on their right hip and cradle them in the crook of their right arm. They then adjust their slings to form a 4-inch loop next to the upper sling swivel with the sling on the left side. As soon as they have prepared the loop, they return to order arms.
- 5. When all stackmen have returned to order arms the platoon commander commands "Open Ranks, MARCH," and ranks are opened as prescribed in paragraph 9016. After the platoon is aligned the platoon commander commands, "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER." He/she then moves to his/her position 6 paces and centered on the platoon prior to giving the next command.
- 6. On the command "Stack, ARMS," the designated stackmen place their weapons directly in front of and centered on their bodies with the sights to the rear. The heel of the rifle butt is placed on the ground on line with the toes of their shoes. Each stacker grasps the rifle at the upper portion of the handguard with the left hand, keeping the rifle vertical. The first two fingers of the left hand hold the inner part of the loop against the rifle. The stacker reaches across the front of the rifle with the right hand, grasps the outer part of the loop and holds it open for insertion of the rifles. (See figure 8-9.) At the same time, the individuals to the left and right of the stackmen perform the following movements simultaneously:
- a. The individuals on the stackmen's right raise and center their weapons by bringing their right wrists to shoulder height and centered on their bodies, magazine wells face the front. They then grasp the handguards (midway) with their left hands, release their right hand and re-grasp the weapon at the small of the stock. Arms are then lowered to a dead hang, so that the weapons are held in a horizontal position with the muzzles to the left and magazine wells still to the front. (See figure 8-9.)
- b. The individuals on the stackmen's left raise and center their weapons by bringing their right wrists to shoulder height and centered on their bodies, magazine wells face the front. They then grasp their weapons at the small of the

stock with their left hands, release their right hands and re-grasp the handguards (midway). Arms are lowered to a dead hang so that the weapons are held in a horizontal position with the muzzles to the right and the magazine wells still to the front. (See figure 8-9.)

- c. As soon as the stackmen have placed their rifles in position, both the individuals to the right and left move their feet 18 inches in the oblique toward the stackmen. The individuals on the stacker's left insert the muzzles of their rifles into the loops to a point approximately halfway between the compensator and the front sight. They hold their weapons in this position until the individuals on the stacker's right insert the muzzles of their rifles in a similar manner but above the other rifle in each loop. (See figure 8-10.)
- d. The butts of the rifles inserted into the loops are swung outward and down to the ground until the stacks are tight with the rifle butts on line and approximately 2 feet forward of the stackmen's rifles. The rifles rest on the side of the butts with the pistol grips pointing inboard toward each other. As each stack is completed, all three individuals stand up at the same time and resume the position of attention. (See figure 8-11.)
- e. Extra rifles are passed to the nearest stacks on the right. Individuals holding extra rifles grasp the barrels of their rifles, raise them vertically and then extend their right arms horizontally to the right front. The persons to the right grasp the weapons at the handguard, center them on their bodies, grasp the barrels with their right hands and extend their right arms horizontally to the right front. This action is repeated until the rifles reach the stackmen. The stackmen lean the rifles against the stacks in such a manner as to prevent them from falling or knocking the stacks over.
- f. If the numbers 3, 7, and 11 were stackmen, the squad leaders would then pass their rifles to the stacker. The squad leaders pass their rifles to the first stack on the left by raising the weapon with the right hand to a position centered on the body. They then grasp the weapon with the left hand at the handguards and pass the weapon the left by extending the left arm horizontally to the left front. The individual to the squad leader's left then grasps the rifle at the barrel with the right hand, centers it on the body, grasps the handguards with the left hand and passes it to the stacker.
- g. After the squad leader of the front rank has passed his/her weapon, the guide would then pass his/her weapon to the stacker in the same manner as the squad leaders.

#### 9019. TO TAKE ARMS

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to recover arms that have been stacked. It may be executed only when the platoon has fallen back in on the weapons stacks. The command is "Take, ARMS."
- 2. On the command of execution "ARMS," if there are extra arms they are passed back in a reverse order and manner of the way they were passed to the stacks. When extra arms have been passed back, or if there were no extra arms, the stackmen grasp their rifles and hold the loops in the same manner as was done for stacking arms. The individuals to the left and right step in the oblique, reach down and

re-grasp their weapons and bring them to a horizontal position. Weapons are freed from the loops, individuals on the right first, and order or unsling arms is assumed. Stackmen cradle their rifles and adjust slings to their original position and then assume the order or unsling arms position.

3. Once everyone is at the position of order or unsling arms, the command "Close Ranks, MARCH" is given.

#### 9020. TO FORM FOR PHYSICAL DRILL

- 1. The purpose of the movement is to form the platoon for physical exercise. It may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention and in a column of threes or fours at normal interval. If armed with rifles, they will be at order arms. The sequence of commands are: "From Front to Rear, Count, OFF;" "Take Interval to the Left, MARCH;" "Arms, DOWN;" and "Even Numbers, To the Right, MOVE." To reform to a column the commands are "Assemble, MARCH" and "COVER."
- 2. The command **"From Front to Rear, Count, OFF"** is given by the platoon commander in order to designate odd and even ranks. It is executed as prescribed for counting off in column.
- 3. The next command is **"Take Interval to the Left, MARCH."** This movement is different from the movement described in paragraph 9012, which is executed when the platoon is in line formation. With the platoon in column, the extended interval is set by designating the number of steps the members of each squad take to the left.
- a. On the command of execution "MARCH," all members of the squad on the right flank (third squad if it is a three squad platoon, fourth squad if it is a four squad platoon) and the guide, will cover in file, stand fast and each member extends both arms sideways at shoulder height, palms down with fingers extended and joined. If armed with rifles each member will grasp the barrel of the rifle with the right hand and raise it to shoulder height with the pistol grip and magazine well facing the front. This squad forms the base of the movement.
- b. At the same time, the members of each squad to the left of the base squad will face to the left as in marching and take two, four, or six (if it is a four squad platoon) 30-inch steps respectively. Upon completing their designated number of steps, they will halt, execute a right face, will cover in file, stand fast, and extend their arms to the side at shoulder height in the same manner as the right file. If armed with rifles the rifles are carried at trail arms during movement and then raised in the same manner as the right file.
- c. At the command "Arms, DOWN," the arms are lowered smartly to the side and if armed with rifles the position of order arms is assumed.
- 4. On the command "Even Numbers to the Right, MOVE," all even numbered individuals and the guide will move to their right to the middle of the interval between files. This will be done by swinging the right leg to the right and springing off the left foot. The movement should be completed in one hop. If armed with rifles the weapon is brought to trail arms and held against the right leg during movement. Once in position, even numbered members cover and assume the position of attention. Odd numbered members do not move. From this position physical drill may be executed without the danger of collisions between individuals.

- 5. Upon the completion of physical drill, the command "Assemble, MARCH" is given. On the command of execution, the odd numbered members of the base squad stand fast. Even numbered members of the base squad step left in marching and double time to their positions covered on the odd numbered members of the base squad and the guide will return to a position in front of the base squad leader. At the same time, all other members will face right as in marching and, at a double time cadence, reassemble in column at normal interval and stand fast. The platoon commander would then give the command of "COVER" in order for the platoon to quickly pick up its alignment and cover.
- 6. The platoon commander, once the platoon is in column, gives all commands from a position 6 paces in front of, centered on and facing the column. He/she makes those movements necessary to maintain this position during the execution of the movement(s).

## 9021. TO CHANGE THE DIRECTION OF A COLUMN

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to change the direction of march of a column. It may be executed when the platoon is halted or marching in column at normal or close interval. The command is "Column Right (Column Left, Column Half Right or Column Half Left), MARCH." The base element during the turn is the squad on the flank in the direction of the turn. The leading member of the base squad, excluding the platoon commander and guide, establishes the pivot for the movement.
- 2. When marching, the commands of execution are given on the foot in the direction of the turn. On the command of execution "MARCH," the leading member of the base squad takes one more 30-inch step to the front and then pivots 90 degrees to the right (left) on the ball of the left (right) foot. He/she then takes one 30-inch step in the new direction before beginning to half step. At the same time other members of the leading rank execute a right (left) oblique. They step in this direction until they are on line with the new line of march (normally two, four and six steps respectively) and then execute a second right (left) oblique. The original interval is maintained while in the oblique. Stepping out of the second oblique with a 30-inch step, they begin to half step as soon as they are aligned on the base squad leader. When all members of the same rank have come abreast, everyone in that rank resumes a full step. Ranks in rear of the leading rank execute the pivot movements on the same points and in the same way as the leading rank. (See figure 9-5.)
- 3. When halted, at the command of execution "MARCH," the leading member of the base squad faces to the right (left) as in marching and takes one 30-inch step in the new direction with the right (left) foot. At the same time other members of the leading rank step off in the right (left) oblique. Members behind the lead rank step off to the front as in forward march. The remainder of the movement is executed the same as in marching.
- 4. During column movements, the platoon commander and guide execute either an oblique or a 90-degree pivot (depending on the direction of the movement) on the command of execution. After completing their turn, they adjust their line of march so that they are in front of the appropriate squad.
- 5. For slight changes of direction, the command is "INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)." At that command, the guide changes direction as commanded. This is not a precision movement and is executed only while marching.

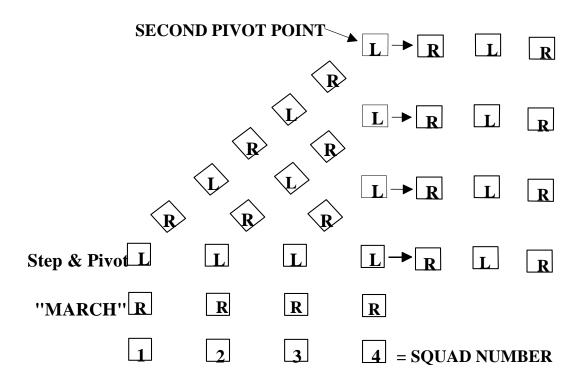


Figure 9-5.--Executing Column Right (Left).

## 9022. TO MARCH TO THE FLANK

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to march the platoon to the right or left flank for a short distance. It may be executed from any formation that is marching at quick time or double time cadence. The command is "By the Right (Left) Flank, MARCH." The command of execution is given as the foot in the direction of the turn strikes the deck.
- 2. To execute a right flank when marching at quick time, the command is "By the Right Flank, MARCH." On the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 90 degrees to the right on the ball of the left foot. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire platoon marches in line to the right flank. The platoon commander and guide execute the flanking movement with the platoon, but do not change their position within the platoon. (For the one exception to this, see paragraph 10011.) For the platoon to resume marching in the original direction, the command is "By the Left Flank, MARCH." To march to the left flank, substitute left for right and right for left in the above sequence. No other command may be given when marching to the flank until the unit has resumed marching to the original front. (See figure 9-6.)
- 3. When this movement is executed from a column at close interval, squad(s) to the rear of the squad that becomes the leading squad takes up the half step. They resume a full step as soon as a 40-inch distance has opened between squads. After such a movement, the platoon maintains normal interval until close march is commanded.

- 4. When marching at double time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes two more 36-inch steps to the front and then two 6-inch vertical steps in place at double time cadence. While stepping in place, everyone turns 90 degrees toward the direction commanded and then steps off with a 36-inch step in the new direction.
- 5. When the platoon executes flank movements from a column at close interval, squad(s) to the rear of the squad that becomes the leading squad, will take up a half step. They resume a full step as soon as a 40-inch distance has opened between squads. After such a movement, the platoon maintains normal interval until close march is commanded.

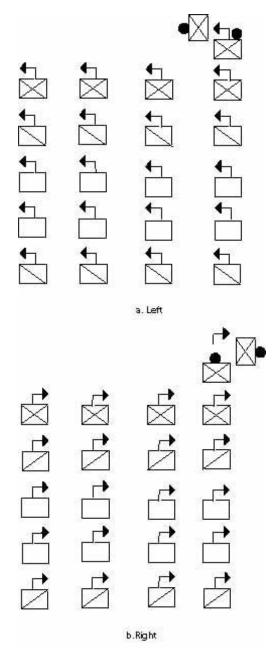


Figure 9-6.--Right (Left) Flank.

## 9023. TO MARCH IN THE OBLIQUE

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to shift the line of march to the right or left for a short distance and then resume marching in the original direction. It may be executed from any formation that is marching at quick time cadence. The command is "Right (Left) Oblique, MARCH." The word oblique is pronounced to rhyme with strike. The command of execution is given as the foot in the direction of the turn strikes the deck. The command to resume the original direction of march is "Forward, MARCH." The command of execution is given as the foot toward the original front strikes the deck.
- 2. To teach the platoon to march to the oblique, the instructor aligns the unit and has members face half right (left). The instructor then explains that these positions are maintained when marching to the oblique. This is achieved by individuals keeping their shoulders parallel to the persons in front and/or adjacent to them. The individual at the corner of the platoon towards the direction of the oblique is the base of the movement, and must maintain a steady line of march keeping his/her other shoulders blocked perpendicular to the direction of march.
- 3. To march the platoon in the right oblique, the command is "Right Oblique, MARCH." On the command "MARCH," everyone then takes one more 30-inch step to the front with the left foot and pivots 45 degrees to the right on the ball of the left foot. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire platoon marches to the right oblique until given another command. (See figure 9-7.) For the platoon to resume marching in the original direction, the command is "Forward, MARCH," in this case the command of execution will be given as the left foot strikes the deck. Everyone then takes one more step in the oblique direction with the right foot; pivots back to the original front and continue to march. To march to the left oblique, substitute left for right and right for left in the above sequence.

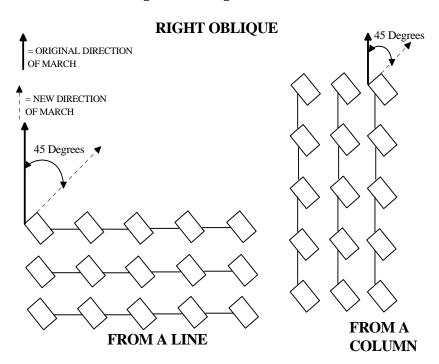


Figure 9-7.--Marching to Right Oblique.

- 4. To halt the squad facing in the original direction of march the command is "Platoon, HALT." The command of execution "HALT" is given on the left foot when marching to the right oblique, and on the right foot when marching to the left oblique. At the command "HALT," everyone takes one more step in the oblique direction, pivots to the original front on the toe of the right (left) foot, and places the left (right) foot beside the other at the position of attention.
- 5. To temporarily halt the squad in the oblique direction, in order to correct errors, the command is "In Place, HALT." The command of execution "HALT" may be given as either foot strikes the deck. At the command of execution "HALT," the squad halts in two counts as in quick time and remains facing in the oblique direction. The only command that can be given after halting in place is "Resume, MARCH." At that command the movement continues marching in the oblique direction.
- 6. When given half step or mark time while marching in the oblique, the only commands that may be given are, "Resume, MARCH," to continue marching with a 30-inch step in the oblique; or "In Place, HALT." to halt in the oblique in order to correct errors.

#### 9024. TO MARCH TO THE REAR

- 1. The purpose of this movement is to march the platoon to the rear for a short distance. It may be executed when halted or marching forward at quick time or double time. The command is "To the Rear, MARCH" it will be given as the right foot strikes the deck.
- 2. When halted, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes one 15-inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 180 degrees toward the right on the balls of both feet. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire platoon marches to the rear. For the platoon to resume marching in the original direction, the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.
- 3. When marching at quick time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes one more 15-inch step to the front with the left foot and then pivots 180 degrees toward the right on the balls of both feet. Stepping out of the pivot with a 30-inch step, the entire platoon marches to the rear. For the platoon to resume marching in the original direction, the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.
- 4. When marching at double time, on the command of execution "MARCH," everyone takes two more 36-inch steps to the front and then four 6-inch vertical steps in place at double time cadence. On the first and third steps in place, everyone pivots 180 degrees to the right. After the fourth step in place, and for the fifth step, they step off with a 36-inch step in the new direction. For the platoon to resume marching in the original direction, the command "To the Rear, MARCH" is given again. No other command may be given when marching to the rear until the unit has resumed marching to the original front.

## 9025. TO FORM A COLUMN OF TWOS OR FILES AND REFORM

- 1. The purpose of these movements is to diminish the front of the platoon in column. They may be executed when the platoon is halted at attention in column of threes or fours, and when at normal or close interval. Squads may be taken from either the right or left side of the platoon. The command to form a column of twos is "Column of Twos from the Right (Left), MARCH." The command to form a column of files is "Column of Files from the Right (Left), MARCH." When the squad leaders give supplemental commands they turn their head and eyes toward the direction of the movement, give the supplemental command, and turn their head and eyes back to the front. When commanding, "Squad, HALT," the squad leaders turn their head and eyes in the direction of the halted element, regardless of the direction of the movement.
- 2. When forming a column of files or twos and reforming to threes (fours) it is important to note, in order to keep from inverting the platoon, that:
- a. If a column of twos or files were taken FROM the LEFT, then a column of threes (fours) must be formed TO the RIGHT.
- b. If a column of twos or files were taken FROM the RIGHT, then a column of threes (fours) must be formed TO the LEFT.

#### 3. When in a Column of Threes, to Form a Column of Twos and Reform

- a. On the preparatory command "Column of Twos from the Right," the squad leaders give the following supplementary commands: the two right squad leaders turn their head and eyes to the right give the supplemental command "Forward," the left squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the left and gives the supplemental command "Column of Twos to the Left." The guide remains in position. On the platoon commander's command of execution "MARCH," the two right squads march forward; the left squad forms a column of twos to the left as prescribed in squad drill. (See paragraph 8014.) Then, on commands of its squad leader, the remaining squad executes a column half right and a column half left so as to follow the two leading squads at normal distance in column. (See figure 9-8.)
- b. To reform into a column of threes the command is "Column of Threes to the Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command, the two lead squad leaders turn their head and eyes to the left and give the supplementary "STAND FAST." The remaining squad leader then turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "Column of Files from the Right" and "Column Half Left." On the platoon commander's command of execution "MARCH," the two leading squads stand fast; the rear squad forms single file from the right.
- (1) The squad leader steps half left in marching turns his/her head and eyes to the right and quickly commands "Column Half Right, MARCH," and executes the command so as to be marching to the left of and parallel to, the lead squads. He/she would continue to march forward until nearing the lead squad leaders, at which time the squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the right and gives the command "Squad, HALT." The squad is halted so that it is aligned with, and the proper interval from, the two lead squads. (See figure 9-8.)
- (2) The remaining members of the squad step off by twos (two and three; four and five; six and seven; etc.) in the left oblique. The even numbered members of the squad take one step in the left oblique and pivot back to the original direction of march, following the squad leader. The odd numbered members of the

squad take three steps in the left oblique and pivot back to the original direction of march, following the squad leader. The steps in the oblique may be adjusted so as to obtain proper interval from the two lead squads.

c. To form a column of twos from the left and reform to a column of threes to the right, use the same procedure as described in paragraph 9025.3b above substituting left for right and right for left. On the platoon commander's preparatory command of "Column of Twos from the Left," the guide changes position to be in front of the second squad leader. When reforming to threes, after all squads have halted, the guide moves back in front of the third squad leader.

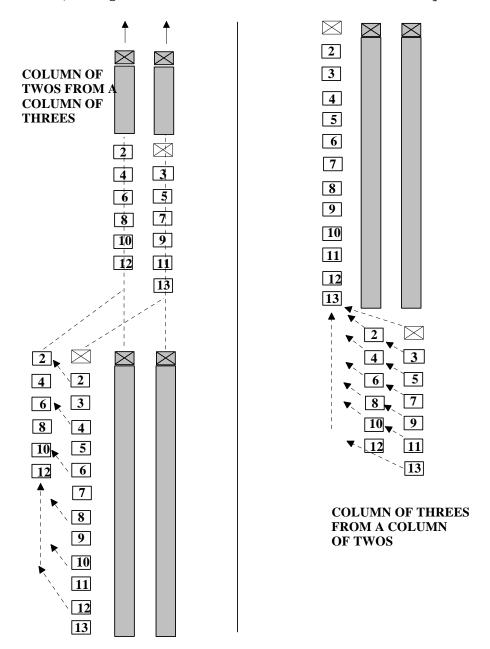


Figure 9-8.--Column of Twos from Column of Threes and Reform.

# 4. When in a Column of Fours, to Form a Column of Twos and Reform

- a. To form a column of twos from a column of fours the command is "Column of Twos from the Right, MARCH." On the preparatory command "Column of Twos from the Right," the squad leaders give the following supplementary commands: the two right squad leaders simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the right and give the supplemental command "Forward." Then the two left squad leader simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the right and give the supplemental command "STAND FAST."

  The guide remains in position. On the platoon commander's command of execution "MARCH," the two right squads march forward; the two left squads stand fast. When the two left squad leaders are about to be passed by the end of the two right squads they simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the right and command "Column Half Right, MARCH." They then step half right in marching, and in unison, command "Column Half Left, MARCH" so to follow the two leading squads at the proper distance. (See figure 9-9.)
- b. To reform from a column of twos to a column of fours the command is "Column of Fours to the Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command "Column of Fours to the Left," the squad leaders give the following supplementary commands: the two lead squad leaders simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the left and command "STAND FAST;" the two rear squad leaders then simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the left and command "Column Half Left." On the command of execution "MARCH:"
  - (1) The two lead squads stand fast.
- (2) The two rear squads execute a column half left from the halt. The two squad leaders then simultaneously turns their head and eyes to the right and command "Column Half Right, MARCH" so to be marching to the left of and parallel to the lead squads. They would continue to march forward until nearing the lead squad leaders, at which time the squad leader simultaneously turn their head and eyes to the right and give the command "Squad, HALT." The squads are halted so that it is aligned with, and the proper interval from the two lead squads.
- c. To form a column of twos from the left and reform to a column of fours to the right, use the same procedure as described in paragraph 9025.4b above substituting left for right and right for left. On the platoon commander's preparatory command of "Column of Twos from the Left," the guide changes position to be in front of the second squad leader. When reforming to fours, after all squads have halted, the guide moves back in front of the fourth squad leader.

## 5. When in a Column of Threes, to Form a Column of Files and Reform

- a. On the preparatory command "Column of Files From the Right," squad leaders turn their head and eyes to the right and give the following supplementary commands. The third squad leader commands "Forward." The remaining squad leaders command "STAND FAST." The guide remains in position. On the platoon commander's command of execution "MARCH," the third squad marches forward; the remaining squads stand fast, then as the fourth to the last member of the squad to the right is about to pass their position the squad leader. (See figure 9-10.)
- (1) The second squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the right and commands "Column Half Right, Column Half Left, MARCH." The squad leader on his/her own command of execution "MARCH," steps in the right oblique then pivots back to the left, so as to march at normal distance in single file behind the leading squad. The remaining squad members march forward and execute the pivots on the same point as established by the squad leader.

(2) The first squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the right and commands "Column Half Right, MARCH" and "Column Half Left, MARCH," so as to march at normal distance in single file behind the leading squad.

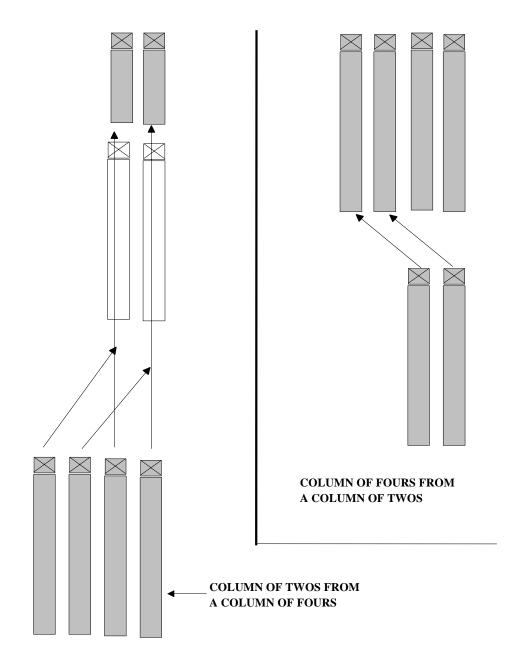


Figure 9-9.--Column of Twos from Column of Fours and Reform.

- b. To reform into a column of threes, the command is "Column of Threes to the Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command, squad leaders, in sequence, give the following supplementary commands: the third squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "STAND FAST;" the second squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "Column Half Left, Column Half Right;" and the first squad leader turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "Forward." On the platoon commander's command of execution "MARCH:"
  - (1) The leading squad stands fast.
- (2) The second squad leader takes one step in the left oblique then pivots back to the right, so as to be marching to the left of and parallel to the lead squad. The remaining squad members march forward and execute the pivots on the same point as established by the squad leader. The squad leader would continue to march forward until nearing the lead squad leader, at which time he/she turns his/her head and eyes to the right and gives the command "Squad, HALT." The squad is halted so that it is aligned with, and the proper interval from the two lead squads.
- (3) The first squad marches forward until approaching the end of the lead squad. The squad leader then turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands, "Column Half Left, MARCH." The squad leader then turns his/her head and eyes to the right and commands "Column Half Right, MARCH" in order to place his/her squad to the left of and at proper interval from the second squad. The squad would continue to march forward until nearing the second squad leaders, at which time the squad leader turns his head/her and eyes to the right and gives the command "Squad, HALT." The squad is halted so that it is aligned with, and the proper interval from the two lead squads.
- c. To form a column of files from the left and reform to a column of threes to the right, use the same procedure as described in paragraphs 9025.5b(2) and (3) above substituting left for right and right for left. On the platoon commander's preparatory command of "Column of Files from the Left," the guide changes position to be in front of the first squad leader. When reforming to threes, after all squads have halted, the guide moves back in front of the third squad leader.
- 6. Forming a column of files and reforming when in a column of fours is executed in a similar manner as when in a column of threes.
- 7. When marching in column of twos, the platoon commander is ahead of the left file and the guide is in front of the right file. When marching in single file, the guide leads the platoon, the platoon commander marches abreast of and to the left of the guide. If executing the movements for practice or instructional purposes the platoon commander would position himself/herself where he/she could best supervise the platoon.

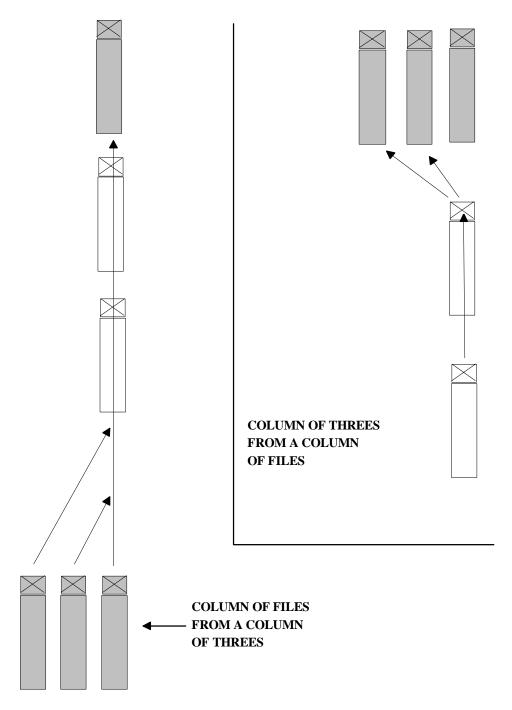


Figure 9-10.--Column of Files from Column of Threes and Reform.

# MARINE CORPS DRILL AND CEREMONIES MANUAL

# PART I: DRILL

# CHAPTER 10

# COMPANY DRILL

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE
GENERAL	10000	10-3
RULES FOR COMPANY DRILL	10001	10-4
TO FORM THE COMPANY	10002	10-5
TO DISMISS THE COMPANY	10003	10-7
BEING IN LINE, TO FORM COLUMN AND REFORM INTO LINE	10004	10-8
TO ALIGN THE COMPANY	10005	10-9
BEING IN COLUMN, TO CHANGE DIRECTION	10006	10-10
BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM MASS FORMATION	10007	10-10
BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM EXTENDED MASS FORMATION	10008	10-12
BEING IN MASS OR EXTENDED MASS FORMATION, TO CHANGE DIRECTION	10009	10-13
BEING IN MASS OR EXTENDED MASS FORMATION, TO FORM COLUMN	10010	10-13
BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE	10011	10-14
BEING IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE, TO FORM COLUMN	10012	10-15
BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM COLUMN OF TWOS OR FILES AND REFORM	10013	10-16
COMPANY AWARDS FORMATIONS	10014	10-17
FIGURE		
10-1 COMPANY IN LINE FORMATION		10-7
10-2 COMPANY IN COLUMN FORMATION		10-8
10-3 COMPANY MASS FORMATION		10-11
10-4 COMPANY IN EXTENDED MASS FORMATION		10-13
10-5 COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE FORMATION		10-15
10-6 PLACING OF AWARD RECIPIENTS FOR THE CEREMONY		10-17
10-7 MOVEMENTS OF THE AWARD RECIPIENTS		10-19

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 10

#### COMPANY DRILL

## 10000. GENERAL

- 1. A company consists of a company headquarters and two or more platoons.
- 2. For close order drill and ceremonies, company headquarters personnel may be attached to platoons without interfering with the permanent squad organization. For marches, members of the company headquarters command group are formed as directed by the company commander or higher authority.
- 3. Formations used by the company are line, column (of threes, etc.), mass, extended mass, and column of platoons in line. In all these formations, the platoons that comprise the company will either be in line (each squad forming one rank) or in column (each squad forming one file). The company may also form column of twos or files in a manner similar to that prescribed for a platoon, in which case the platoons are arranged as in column, except that each platoon is in column of twos or files. Formations of the company for drills and ceremonies, to include posts of officers and key noncommissioned officers, are shown in figures 10-1 through 10-5.
- a. When the company commander is absent, the senior officer present with the company takes post and drills the company as prescribed for the company commander. In the absence of the first sergeant, the senior noncommissioned officer (normally the gunnery sergeant) takes post and performs the duties of first sergeant.
- b. When officers are not present, after the company is formed, the first sergeant, or in his/her absence, the next senior staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officer takes post and drills the company as prescribed for the company commander, and platoon sergeants take post and perform the duties of platoon commanders. This also applies when, for any reason, the company commander directs the first sergeant (or senior staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officer) to take charge of the company for purposes other than dismissing the company. When this occurs, the officers retire and the first sergeant and platoon sergeants march by the most direct route to take post as the company commander and platoon commanders, respectively.
- c. For drill and ceremonies, the following minimum key billets within the company must be filled by applying the above rules: company commander, guidon bearer, and first sergeant in the company headquarters; and a platoon commander, platoon sergeant, and guide for each platoon, plus one squad leader per squad within each platoon. (NOTE: When officers are not present and the first sergeant and platoon sergeants are acting as company commander and platoon commanders respectively, other noncommissioned officers need not be detailed to also act as first sergeant and/or platoon sergeants.)
- d. For drill and ceremonies, the company guidon is carried by the guidon bearer. In all formations, the guidon bearer is 1 pace to the rear and 1 pace to the left of the company commander or first sergeant, as appropriate. For marches in the field, the guidon is kept with company headquarters baggage unless otherwise directed. If carried on marches in the field, the guidon bearer takes post as described above for drill and ceremonies.

4. During company physical training and conditioning marches when the company is in column, the first sergeant will move from his/her normal position at the rear of the column and assume a position to the left of the company commander. If the guidon is also present it will be carried on the march or run to the rear of the company commander and first sergeant.

# 10001. RULES FOR COMPANY DRILL

- 1. The platoon, rather than the company, is the basic drill unit. Only such formations are prescribed for the company as are necessary for marches, drills, and ceremonies.
- 2. In company drill, if all Marines in the unit are to execute the same movement simultaneously, platoon commanders will not repeat preparatory commands of the company commander. When commands such as "FALL OUT" are given, which combine the preparatory command and command of execution. When the preparatory command of the company commander is "Company," the platoon commanders give the preparatory command "Platoon."
- a. When in mass formation, platoon commanders repeat preparatory commands only when the order will require independent movement by a platoon.
- b. When the platoons of the company are to execute a movement in successive order, such as a column movement, the platoon commander of the first platoon to execute the movement repeats the company commander's preparatory command, and those of following platoons give an appropriate caution such as "Continue to March." Platoon commanders of following platoons repeat the company commander's preparatory command and command of execution at the proper time to cause their platoons to execute the movement on the same ground as the first platoon.
- c. When participating in parades and ceremonies when commands by the adjutant, commander of troops, or company commander can be clearly heard, supplemental commands need not be given.
- 3. Platoon commanders turn their head and eyes when giving supplemental commands using the following rules.
- a. When executing halted movements, such as the manual of arms, the platoon commander turns his/her head and eyes to the right.
- b. For movements that involve marching, (e.g., forming from column into mass, mass into column or column movements) the platoon commander turns his/her head and eyes to the direction of the movement to give supplemental command.
- c. When bringing the platoon on line with a halted element the platoon commander turns his/her head and eyes towards the halted element to give the command of mark time or halt.
- 4. When commands involve movements of the company in which one platoon stands fast or continues the march, while one or more of the others do not, its commander commands "STAND FAST" or "Continue to March," as the case may be.

- 5. The company marches, executes change of direction, closes and extends intervals between squads in column, opens and closes ranks, and stacks and takes arms as in platoon drill.
- 6. The company executes marching in line only for minor changes in position.
- 7. Unless otherwise specified for the company to be at close interval, all changes in formation must be executed with files and ranks formed at normal interval and distance.

#### 10002. TO FORM THE COMPANY

1. At the command "FALL IN," the company forms in line formation at normal interval and distance. If it is desired to form the company at close interval between files, the command "At Close Interval, FALL IN" is given. In this case, the platoons form in line, but files within each platoon are at close interval (4 inches). The company forms at close interval only for roll calls or when space is limited. The company may be formed by its staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officers under charge of the first sergeant, or by its officers under command of the company commander, as described below.

# 2. Forming the Company by Noncommissioned Officers

- a. The first sergeant takes post 9 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces that point, draws sword if so armed, and commands "FALL IN" ("At Close Interval, FALL IN"). At this command, the guidon bearer takes post facing the front 1 pace to the front and 1 pace to the right of the first sergeant (the first sergeant facing the company), and the company forms in line with platoons in line at normal (close) interval and 4 paces between platoons. Each platoon sergeant takes post 3 paces in front of and facing the point where the center of the platoon is to be, faces that point, and draws sword if so armed. Each platoon then forms (as prescribed in paragraph 9004), under the supervision of the platoon sergeant.
- b. Platoon sergeants then command "REPORT." Remaining in position (at order arms if armed with the rifle), the squad leaders, in succession from front to rear in each platoon, salute and report, "All present," or "Private \_\_\_\_\_\_ absent." Platoon sergeants then command "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "Order, ARMS" if troops are armed with rifles, then face about to the front. If troops are not armed with rifles, the platoon sergeant immediately faces the front after receiving the reports of the squad leaders. (NOTE: If platoons cannot be formed in regularly organized squads prior to forming the company, the platoon sergeants command "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" "Right Shoulder, ARMS;" and call the roll. Each Marine answers "here," and goes to order arms as their name is called. The platoon sergeant then organizes the platoon into squads and faces the front. The manual of arms is omitted for personnel not armed with rifles.)
- c. After all platoon sergeants have completed receiving the reports of their squad leaders and are facing the front, the first sergeant commands "REPORT," at which time the platoon sergeants, beginning with the right platoon, successively salute and report, "All present or accounted for" or "\_\_\_\_\_ men absent." The first sergeant returns each salute individually. What occurs next depends upon whether the company commander and platoon commanders receive the company or not.

- (1) If company officers do not receive the formation, after receiving the reports of all the platoon sergeants, the first sergeant commands, "POST." On this command, the platoon sergeants and guidon bearer step forward three steps; simultaneously, the first sergeant faces about and steps forward three steps. The company is now formed with the first sergeant and platoon sergeants occupying the posts prescribed for the company commander and platoon commanders.
- (2) If company officers receive the formation, the company commander and platoon commanders normally observe the initial procedures from a location to the rear of where the company is forming (officers remain with swords in their scabbards, if so armed). In this case, after receiving the reports of the platoon sergeants, the first sergeant faces the front and awaits the arrival of the company commander. When the company commander has taken post 12 paces front and center of the company, the first sergeant salutes and reports "Sir/Ma'am, all present or accounted for." or "Sir/Ma'am, \_\_\_\_\_ Marines absent." The company commander returns the salute, and may discuss absentees and issue necessary instructions to the first sergeant. Next, the company commander directs the first sergeant to "TAKE YOUR POST," at which the guidon bearer marches forward 3 paces, and the first sergeant and platoon sergeants march by the most direct routes to their posts, the former in rear of the company, the latter on the left of the rear rank of their platoons; simultaneously, the company executive officer takes post to the rear of the company and the platoon commanders move around the right front of their platoons and take their posts 6 paces front and center of their platoons. After all officers are in position, if armed with the sword, the company commander draws sword; the company executive officer and platoon commanders draw sword with the company commander.

## 3. Forming the Company by Officers

- a. Normally, the company is initially formed by the staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officers, then received by the officers as described in paragraph 10002 above. This permits detailed musters to be taken by the staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officers. During the course of training, if the company has been dismissed for a short period of time, it may be initially reformed by the company commander to save time.
- b. When the company is initially formed by the company commander, the procedures are the same as forming with the staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officers, except that the company commander takes post 12 paces front and center and facing the point where the center of the company is to be, draws sword if so armed, and commands "FALL IN." Platoon commanders then take posts 6 paces front and center and facing the point where the center of their platoons will be, draw sword if so armed, form their platoons and receive the reports of their squad leaders, then face the front. After all platoon commanders have formed their platoons and are facing the front, the company commander commands "REPORT," at which time each platoon commander, in succession from right to left, salutes and reports, "Sir/Ma'am, all present or accounted for," or "Sir/Ma'am, Marines absent."

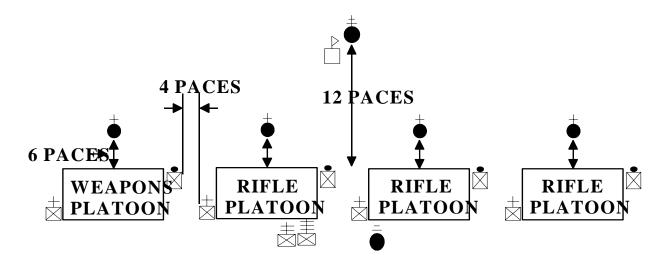


Figure 10-1.--Company in Line Formation.

#### 10003. TO DISMISS THE COMPANY

- 1. The commands are "FIRST SERGEANT" and "DISMISS THE COMPANY." The company being in line at a halt, at the command "FIRST SERGEANT," the first sergeant moves by the most direct route to a point 3 paces from the company commander (9 paces in front of the center of the company), halts, and salutes the company commander returns the salute and passes any directions or information necessary to the first sergeant. The company commander directs the first sergeant to "DISMISS THE COMPANY." The first sergeant and company commander exchange salutes. After returning the first sergeant's salute the company commander, returns sword, if so armed, and falls out. Other officers of the company return sword, if so armed, and fall out at the same time and in the same manner as described in paragraph 10002.2c(2). The platoon sergeants take their posts 3 paces in front of the centers of their platoons. The first sergeant, when the company commander returns his/her salute, executes an about face. When the platoon sergeants have taken their positions, the first sergeant commands "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "DISMISSED."
- 2. The company being in line at a halt, dismissal may also be ordered by the command "DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS." The platoon commanders salute; the company commander returns their salute, returns sword, if so armed, and falls out. The platoon commanders execute about face and command "PLATOON SERGEANT." The platoon sergeant takes his/her post 3 paces in front of the center of the platoon halts, facing the platoon commander and salutes. The platoon commander returns the salute and passes any directions or information necessary to the platoon sergeant. The platoon commander then directs the platoon sergeant to "DISMISS THE PLATOON," the platoon sergeant and platoon commander exchange salutes. After the platoon commander has returned the platoon sergeant's salute, he/she returns sword if so armed, and falls out. The platoon sergeant then faces the platoon and commands "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "DISMISSED."
- 3. The first sergeant may cause platoons to be dismissed by the platoon sergeants by commanding "DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS." The platoon sergeants salute; the first sergeant returns the salute, returns sword if so armed, and falls out. The platoon sergeants then execute about face and command "Inspection, ARMS;" "Port, ARMS;" and "DISMISSED."

## 10004. BEING IN LINE, TO FORM COLUMN AND REFORM INTO LINE

- 1. Being at a halt and at the order in line, to form column, the company commander orders "Right, FACE." After facing to the right, all officers, key staff noncommissioned or noncommissioned officers, and the guidon bearer march by the most direct routes to their posts in column. The company commander may then cause the column to march (NOTE: As platoons and squads become inverted if the company is faced to the left, this should be done only for short movements.).
- 2. Being at a halt and at the order in column, to form line, the company commander commands "Left, FACE." (NOTE: If the company is at close interval they must be extended to normal interval, paragraph 9015, prior to executing left face. Otherwise there will not be 40 inches of distance between ranks.) After facing to the left, all officers, key noncommissioned officers, and the guidon bearer march by the most direct routes to their posts in line. (NOTE: When in column, if the company is faced to the right, platoons and squads become inverted. Therefore, to form line facing the right flank of a column, the company should first be marched by executing necessary changes in direction, so that after halting and facing to the left, line will be formed facing the desired direction.)

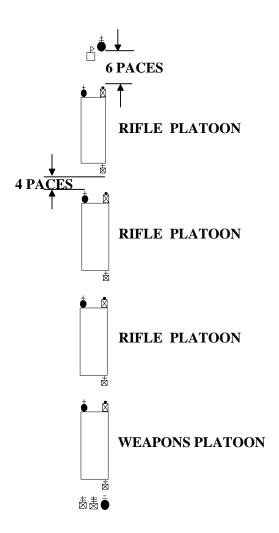


Figure 10-2.--Company in Column Formation.

## 10005. TO ALIGN THE COMPANY

- 1. To align the company when in line at a halt, the company commander commands, "DRESS RIGHT (CENTER, LEFT)." At the command "DRESS RIGHT," the platoon commander of the base platoon aligns his/her platoon immediately by the commands "Dress Right, DRESS;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER." After the platoon commander of the base platoon gives the command to dress right, the remaining platoon commanders will align their platoons in successive order. When "DRESS CENTER" is given, the commander of the center platoon, which is the base platoon for this movement, aligns the platoon to the center of the company. The base platoon for this movement is the second platoon in both three and four platoon companies. After the base platoon commander has aligned the platoon, the remaining platoon commanders will align their respective platoons on the base platoon by executing "Dress Right (Left), DRESS;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER," as explained in paragraph 9009.
- 2. To align the company when in mass formation at a halt, the company commander commands "Dress Right (Left), DRESS" or "At Close Interval, Dress Right (Left), DRESS;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER."
- a. At the command "Dress Right (Left)," the platoon commander of the base platoon goes to carry sword if so armed.
- b. On the command of execution "DRESS," the platoon commander of the base platoon takes one step forward, executes a right flank, moves to a position 1 pace to the right of the right squad leader, executes another right flank and halts 1 pace to the right of the rank of squad leaders. He/she then executes a right face and verifies the alignment of the squad leaders in the same manner as alignment is verified in paragraph 9009. He/she then verifies the alignment of the rest of the company as described in paragraph 9009. (Note: During parades and ceremonies the platoon commander of the base platoon would normally only check the alignment of the 1st, 5th, 9th and 13th (last) rank.) After verifying the alignment of the last rank the platoon commander marches back to the front of the formation 1 pace past the guide. He/she then executes a left flank and moves, by the most direct route, back to his/her position at the head of his/her platoon. The platoon commander then halts, from the oblique, faces right and goes to order sword. When the platoon commander resumes his/her post, the company commander commands "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER."
- 3. To align the company when in extended mass formation at a halt, the company commander commands "Dress Right (Left), DRESS" or "At Close Interval, Dress Right (Left), DRESS;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER." Alignment is verified as described in paragraph 10005.2b, above. Except that all platoon commanders move to verify the alignment of their platoons.
- 4. To align the company when in column, platoons in column, the command is "COVER." At that command, the second and following platoons obtain the proper 4-pace distances between platoons and cover on the files of the leading platoon. Each platoon aligns internally as prescribed in paragraph 9009.
- 5. To align the company when in column of platoons in line at halt, the company commander commands, "DRESS RIGHT (LEFT)." At this command, the leading platoon (which is the base platoon) is immediately aligned by its commander who commands, "Dress Right (Left), DRESS;" "Ready, FRONT;" and "COVER." After the platoon commander of the base platoon has given the command to align the platoon, the remaining platoon commanders in succession from front to rear give the command to align their platoons. Platoon commanders follow the procedures prescribed in paragraph 9009, and ensure that the guides are covered on the guide of the leading platoon.

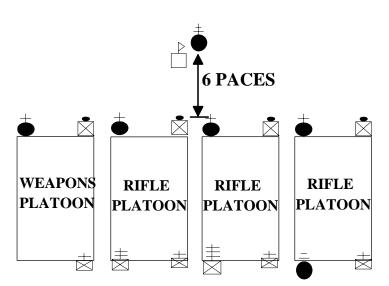
## 10006. BEING IN COLUMN, TO CHANGE DIRECTION

- 1. Being at a halt or in march while in column, to change direction 90 degrees to the right (left), the company commander orders "Column Right (Left), MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander, "Column Right (Left);" and remaining platoon commanders, "Forward," if initiated from a halt ("Continue to March," if initiated while marching). On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon executes a column right (left). Succeeding platoons march forward, and on the commands of their platoon commanders, execute a column right (left) on the same ground as the leading platoon.
- 2. To execute a 45-degree change in direction, the execution is the same as above, except the command "Column Half Right (Left), MARCH" is used. Platoon commanders give appropriate supplementary commands.
- 3. For slight changes in direction, on the command of the company commander to "INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)," the guide of the leading platoon changes direction as commanded. Succeeding platoons march forward and change direction on the same ground as the leading platoon. No supplementary commands are given by the platoon commanders.

## 10007. BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM MASS FORMATION

- 1. Being at a halt in column at close or normal interval, the company commander orders "Company, Mass Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "STAND FAST;" remaining platoon commanders turn their head and eyes to the left and command "Column Half Left." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon stands fast, and the remaining platoons simultaneously execute a column half left. On commands of their platoon commanders, the remaining platoons then execute a column half right so as to move into positions alongside the leading platoon at the appropriate interval. As each platoon commander is about to come on line with the leading rank of the halted element, they turn their head and eyes to the right and command "Mark Time, MARCH." The platoon marks time 4-8 counts to gain cover and alignment and is halted by the platoon commander. This forms the company in mass at the appropriate intervals between all adjacent platoons and files.
- 2. The company on the march in column at close or normal interval is given the same commands at the halt, except that on the preparatory command the leading platoon commander commands "Mark Time." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon marks time 4-8 counts then halts on command of its platoon commander. The commands and movements for the remaining platoons are the same as for executing the movement from a halt.
- 3. If the company was in column at normal interval, then the company mass is at normal interval (e.g., normal interval between files in the platoons and normal interval between platoons in the company). If the company was in column at close interval, then the company mass is at close interval (e.g., close interval between files in the platoons and close interval between platoons in the company).

- 4. To form a company mass right use the same commands as in paragraph 10007 substituting left for right and right for left. However, forming a company into a mass right results in the platoons being inverted and should only be done under unusual circumstances.
- 5. There will be occasions when enlisted personnel form the company in mass as part of a larger formation. When the company officers receive the company the same procedures as in paragraph 10002.2c(2) will be used except, that all key personnel on the command "TAKE YOUR POST" will execute the following.
- a. The platoon commanders will be at the rear of the formation in reverse order.
- b. On the command "TAKE YOUR POST" the first sergeant will move by the most direct route around the left of the formation and assume his/her normal positions in the rear of the formation.
- c. The guidon will move 3 paces forward to his/her position 1 pace to the left and behind the company commander.
- d. The platoon commanders will move to their position in front of the their respective first squad leaders by the most direct route. This is done by marching in column around the right of the formation until they are 1 pace from their first squad leader and then take one step in the left oblique, halt in front of the squad leader and on line with the guides and execute a right face.



INTERVAL BETWEEN PLATOONS IS THE SAME AS THE INTERVAL BETWEEN FILES OF THE PLATOON.

Figure 10-3.--Company Mass Formation.

## 10008. BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM EXTENDED MASS FORMATION

- 1. At a halt or in march while in column, to form extended mass, the company commander orders "Company Mass (3 to 6) Paces Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander turns his/her head and eyes to the left and commands "STAND FAST" remaining platoon commanders turn their head and eyes to the left and command "Column Half Left." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon stands fast, and the remaining platoons simultaneously execute a column half left. On commands from their platoon commanders, the remaining platoons then execute a column half right so as to move into positions alongside the leading platoon at the designated (3 to 6-pace) interval. As each platoon commander is about to come on line with the leading rank of the halted element, they turn their head and eyes to the right and command "Mark Time, MARCH." The platoon marks time 4-8 counts to gain cover and alignment and is halted by the platoon commander. This formation is used for drills and ceremonies if it is desired to increase the size of the mass in order to present a more impressive appearance. The company in this formation drills in the same manner as for mass formation, maintaining the specified interval between platoons and files in the platoons.
- 2. The company on the march in column at close or normal interval are given the same commands at the halt, except that on the preparatory command the leading platoon commander commands "Mark Time." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon marks time 4-8 counts then halts on command of its platoon commander. The commands and movements for the remaining platoons are the same as for executing the movement from a halt.
- 3. If the company was in column at normal interval, then the company extended mass has normal interval between files in the platoons and the specified (3-6 pace) interval between platoons in the company. If the company was in column at close interval, then the company extended mass has close interval, 4 inches, between files in the platoons and specified (3-6 paces) interval between platoons in the company.
- 4. To form a company extended mass right use the same commands as in paragraph 10008.1 substituting left for right and right for left. However, forming a company into a mass right results in the platoons being inverted and should only be done under unusual circumstances.
- e. If the unit is formed at extended mass by enlisted personnel as part of a larger formation the same procedures for posting as in paragraph 10002.2c(2).

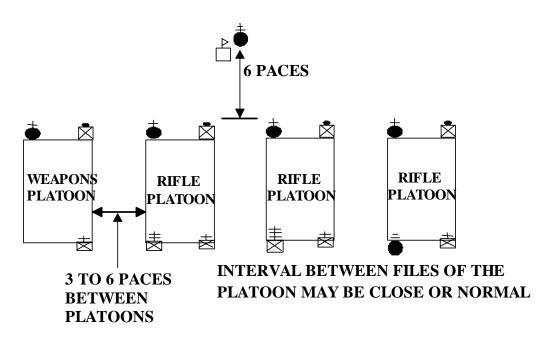


Figure 10-4.--Company in Extended Mass Formation.

## 10009. BEING IN MASS OR EXTENDED MASS FORMATION, TO CHANGE DIRECTION

- 1. Being in mass or extended mass formation at a halt or in march, to change direction 90 degrees to the right (left), the company commander commands "Right (Left) Turn, MARCH" and "Forward, MARCH." The right flank guide of the line of guides and platoon commanders is the pivot for this movement. At the command of execution "MARCH," for the right (left) turn, the pivot faces to the right (left) in marching and takes up the half step. Other members of the first rank execute a right (left) oblique, advance until opposite their place in line, execute a second right (left) oblique, and upon arriving abreast of the pivot man, take up the half step. Each succeeding rank executes the movement on the same ground and in the same manner as the first rank. All take a full step at the command "Forward, MARCH," which is given by the company commander after all members of the company have changed direction and have picked up the half step.
- 2. Being in mass or extended mass formation at a halt or in march, to change direction 45 degrees to the right (left), the company commander commands "Half Right (Left) Turn, MARCH" and "Forward, MARCH." This movement is executed in a similar manner for a right turn as described above, except that the pivot makes a half right (left) face in marching, and the members of each rank need execute only one right (left) oblique in marching.

## 10010. BEING IN MASS OR EXTENDED MASS FORMATION, TO FORM COLUMN

1. Being at a halt in mass or extended mass formation, to form column, the commands are "Column of Threes (Fours), Right (Left) Platoon, Forward (Column Right), MARCH." On the preparatory command, the platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: right (left) platoon commander commands "Forward (Column Right);" and the remaining platoon commanders command "STAND FAST." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the right (left) platoon marches forward and the remaining platoons stand fast. When the leading platoon

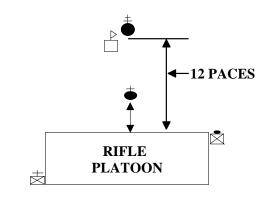
reaches an appropriate point, the next platoon, on commands of its platoon commander, executes necessary column movements so as to take up the march in column at a distance of 4 paces from the leading platoon. Remaining platoons in succession, take up the march in column at distances of 4 paces in a similar manner.

2. Being on the march in mass or extended mass formation, to form a column, the company commander gives the same command as when initiated from a halt. In this case, on the preparatory command, the right (left) platoon commands "Continue to March (Column Right)," and the remaining platoon commanders command "Mark Time." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the right (left) platoon continues the march (executes a column right) and the remaining platoons mark time. The platoon commanders of the remaining platoons cause their platoons to execute necessary column movements so as to follow in column behind the leading platoon at a 4-pace distance in a similar manner as when the movement is initiated from a halt.

## 10011. BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE

- 1. Being at a halt and at the order in column, to form column of platoons in line the company commander commands "Column of Platoons in Line, MARCH" and "Left, FACE." On the first preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander commands "STAND FAST;" second platoon commander commands "Column Right," and all other platoon commanders commands "Forward." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon stands fast, the second platoon executes a column right and marches 12 paces past the right file of the leading platoon, then, on command of its platoon commander, executes a column left, and marches forward until its front rank is on line with the front rank of the leading platoon (now on its left), marks time 4-8 counts, and halts. Succeeding platoons march forward, executing a column right on the same ground as the leading platoon, then a column left, and finally marking time 4-8 counts and halting on line on commands of their platoon commanders so as to be at 12-pace intervals. When all platoons are halted on line, the company commander commands "Left, FACE." All platoons execute a left face with each platoon commander moving by the most direct route to their post 6 paces front and center of the platoon, and each platoon guide takes post on the right of the front rank of each platoon; the company is then formed in column of platoons in line with 12-pace distances between platoons. The formation may be used for inspections and for the display of equipment.
- 2. Being on the march in column, to form column of platoons in line, the commands are "Column of Platoons in Line, Leading Platoon by the Left Flank, MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: the leading platoon commander commands "By the Left Flank;" the remaining platoon commanders command, "Continue to March." Simultaneously, on the preparatory command, all platoon commanders incline to the left from their posts in column and half step so as to be as near as possible to a position 6 paces from and centered on the left file of their platoons prior to the company commander's command of execution "MARCH." At that command, the leading platoon executes a left flank march, its guide moving abreast of the front rank as rapidly as possible; succeeding platoons continue the march forward and, on commands of their platoon commanders, execute a left flank on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading platoon. Each platoon commander, after executing a left flank march, marches at a position 6 paces front and center of the platoon, and the company

commander, guidon bearer, and company staff march in positions. In this formation, which may be used for passing in review during ceremonies, the company marches in column of platoons in line, with the distance between each platoon equal to the length of each platoon plus 4 paces.



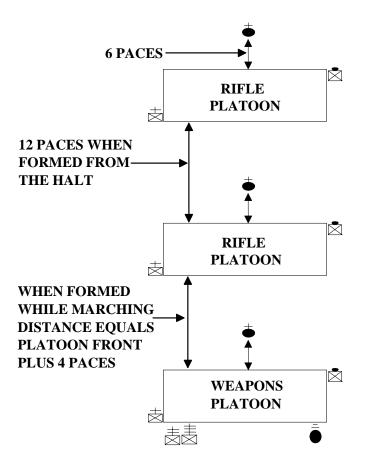


Figure 10-5.--Column of Platoons in Line Formation.

## 10012. BEING IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE, TO FORM COLUMN

- 1. Being halted at the order in a column of platoons in line, to form column, the company commander commands "Right, FACE," at which time all platoons face to the right with platoon commanders and guides taking posts at the head of the left and right files respectively of their platoons. Next, the company commander orders "Column of Threes (Fours, etc.), Left Platoon, Forward (Column Left), MARCH."

  Thereafter, commands and procedures for executing this movement are the same as prescribed for forming a column from a mass or extended mass formation from the halt in paragraph 10010.
- 2. While in a column of platoons in line, to form column, the commands are: "Column of Threes (Fours, etc.), Leading Platoon, By the Right Flank, MARCH" or "Column of Threes (Fours, etc.), Leading Platoon by the Right Flank, Column Left, MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders give the following supplementary commands: the lead platoon commander commands "By the Right Flank (By the Right Flank, Column Left);" remaining platoon commanders command, "Continue to March." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon executes a right flank (right flank, column left). Succeeding platoons continue to march forward, each, on the command of its platoon commander, executing a right flank (right flank, column left) on the same ground as the leading platoon, then following in trace of the leading platoon in column at 4-pace distances. Officers, key noncommissioned officers, and the company guidon move by the most direct routes to their proper positions in column.

NOTE: In forming column from column of platoons in line at a halt or while marching, movements should always be made in the directions indicated above, otherwise platoons and squads become inverted.

## 10013. BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM COLUMN OF TWOS OR FILES AND REFORM

- 1. Being at a halt in column, to form column of twos (files), the company commander commands "Column of Twos (Files) from the Right (Left), MARCH." On the preparatory command, platoon commanders and squad leaders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander commands "Column of Twos (Files) from the Right (Left)," after which the squad leaders of the leading platoon give appropriate supplementary commands to form the movement required as prescribed in paragraph 9025; the remaining platoon commanders command "STAND FAST." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon marches forward in column of twos (files) as prescribed in platoon drill. Succeeding platoons march forward in column of twos (files) on the commands of their platoon commanders and squad leaders in the same manner as the leading platoon so as to follow the leading platoon in column at 4-pace distances.
- b. Being at a halt in column of twos (files), to reform column (e.g., column of threes, etc.), the company commander commands "Column of Threes (Fours, etc.) to the Left (Right), MARCH." On the preparatory command, the platoon commanders and squad leaders give the following supplementary commands: leading platoon commander commands "Column of Threes (Fours, etc.) to the Left (Right)," after which the squad leaders of the leading platoon give appropriate supplementary commands as prescribed in paragraph 9025; the remaining platoon commanders command "STAND FAST." On the company commander's command of execution "MARCH," the leading platoon marches forward in column (of threes, etc.) as prescribed in platoon drill. Succeeding platoons march forward in column (of threes) on the commands of their platoon commanders and squad leaders in the same manner as the leading platoon so as to follow the leading platoon in column at 4-pace distances.

## 10014. COMPANY AWARDS FORMATIONS

- 1. The ceremonies that are normally conducted at the company level are, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Promotions
  - b. Awards
  - c. Reenlistments
  - d. Special Recognition
- 2. The company formation normally used for company ceremonies is the Company in Line.
- 3. The first sergeant forms the company in line with those personnel to receive awards, promotions, etc., forming a single rank behind the last squad of the first platoon. (See figure 10-6.) They are arranged in reverse sequence of presentation priority, to ensure that they are presented to the company commander in the appropriate sequence. (e.g., The junior award recipient would be first in line to march out.) The priority sequence will normally be:
- a. Personal decorations and awards. (e.g., Navy-Marine Corps Achievement Medal, Meritorious Mast, and Letters of Appreciation)
  - b. Promotions.
  - c. Reenlistments.
  - d. Service Awards. (e.g., Good Conduct Medal)
  - e. Other certificates (e.g., discharge certificate, MCI completion, etc.)
- f. Retirements if performed on the company level should be a separate ceremony, conducted in the same manner.

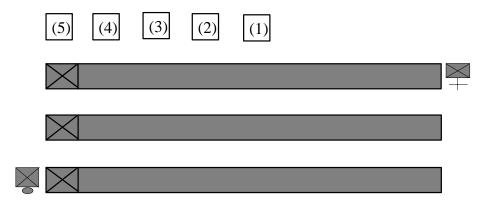




Figure 10-6.--Placing of Award Recipients for the Ceremony.

- 4. The company is formed as depicted in paragraph 10002. After the first sergeant receives the report from the platoon sergeants he/she faces about and waits for the company commander to take the formation. The first sergeant executes a hand salute and reports the company to the company commander. The company commander returns the salute, and commands "TAKE YOUR POST."
- a. At this command, rather than taking his/her normal post at the rear of the company, the first sergeant will step off in the left oblique and march around the commander's right, and continuing to march until he/she has positioned himself/herself 1 pace to the left and 1 pace to the rear of the company commander. (See figure 10-7.) Platoon commanders take their post centered on their platoons, platoon sergeants post as shown in figure 10-7 and the guidon bearer takes 3 paces forward.
- b. The first sergeant will then command "Marines to Receive Awards (be Promoted, Reenlisted, etc.), Center, MARCH."
- (1) On the command of "Center," the Marines receiving awards execute a right face.
- (2) On the command "MARCH," the award recipients will step off and continue to march until they have cleared the guide of the first platoon. The senior Marine receiving an award will then command "Column Left, MARCH." (See figure 10-7.)
- (3) They will continue to march to a position that places them at a point half way between the line of platoon commanders and the company commander. The senior Marine will then command "Column Left, MARCH."
- (4) They will continue to march on this line until the rank of award recipients is centered on the company commander, at which time the senior Marine will command "Mark Time, MARCH;" "Detail, HALT;" "Right, FACE;" and "Hand, SALUTE." (See figure 10-7.)
- c. After the commander has returned the salute, the senior Marine will then command "Ready, TWO."
- 5. The first sergeant or narrator, if one is used, will then read the first citation or warrant. The commander and the first sergeant will then step off and march directly to the first Marine and halt, so the commander is directly in front. The first sergeant will pass the award or warrant to the commander who will then present it to the Marine. After the Marine receives his/her citation the commander and the first sergeant will face to the right as in marching, and march until the commander is in front of the next Marine, halt, and execute a left face. The first sergeant or narrator will read the next citation and the commander will present it. They will continue until the last award or citation is presented. They will then face to the right as in marching, and march in the most direct route to their original positions.
- 6. Once the company commander and first sergeant are back in position, the first sergeant will then command "POST." On the command "POST," the senior Marine will command "Hand, SALUTE." The entire detail will execute. After the commander returns the salute, the senior Marine commands "Ready, TWO" followed by "Left, FACE."

7. The first sergeant then commands "Forward, MARCH." On the command of execution "MARCH," the award recipients under the command of the senior Marine will march forward until they are at a position past the platoon sergeant of the last platoon and command "Column Left, MARCH." They will continue to march until they are 1 pace past the last rank of the last platoon, the senior Marine will then command "Column Left, MARCH." They will continue to march to a position behind the last rank. The senior Marine will then command "Mark Time, MARCH;" "Detail, HALT;" "Left, FACE." (See figure 10-7.)

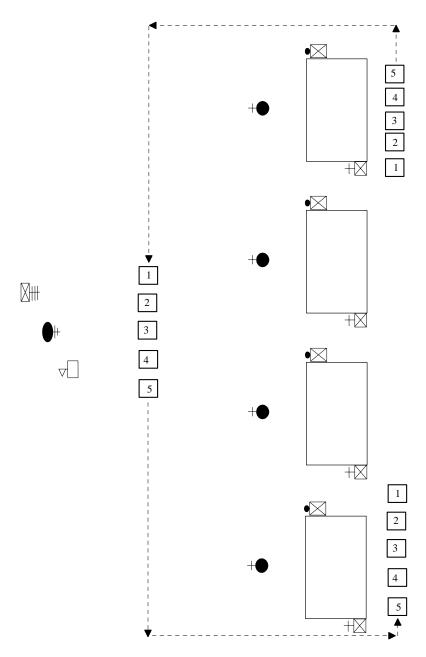


Figure 10-7.--Movements of the Award Recipients.

- 8. This completes the ceremony. The company commander would then dismiss the company or carries out the plan of the day.
- 9. When promoting a number of Marines to the same grade, it is appropriate to read only one warrant, inserting all of the names of the Marines being promoted at the appropriate place. However, one warrant is read for each grade being promoted (e.g., one warrant read for the two sergeants, another warrant read for the five corporals, etc.) Additionally, for good conduct medals it is appropriate to read only on citation for all hands receiving the medal, reading the name and number of awards at the appropriate place for all Marines.

# PART I: DRILL

## CHAPTER 11

# BATTALION DRILL

		PARAGRAPGH	PAGE	
GENERAL		11000	11-3	
RULES FO	OR BATTALION DRILL	11001	11-4	
TO FORM	FOR ROUTINE FORMATIONS	11002	11-5	
	FOR INSPECTIONS, DRILLS, MARCHES, OR PRIOR TO PATION IN LARGER MARCHES OR CEREMONIES	11003	11-5	
TO FORM	IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN LINE FOR BATTALION FORMATIONS EMONIES	11004	11-6	
	IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN MASS (EXTENDED MASS) FORMATIC FALION FORMATIONS AND CEREMONIES	N 11005	11-10	
TO FORM	BATTALION IN MASS	11006	11-13	
BATTALION IN COLUMN WITH COMPANIES IN COLUMN				
BATTALIO	ON IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES WITH COMPANIES IN LINE	11008	11-16	
TO DISM	ISS THE BATTALION	11009	11-17	
	FIGURE			
11-1	BATTALION IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN LINE		11-6	
11-2	GUIDE ON LINE		11-7	
11-3	PLATOON HALT		11-8	
11-4	GUIDES POST		11-8	
11-5	MODIFIED BATTALION IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN LINE		11-9	
11-6	BATTALION IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN MASS FORMATION		11-10	
11-7	GUIDE OF THE RIGHT PLATOON ON LINE		11-10	
11-8	FORMING A COMPANY MASS LEFT		11-12	
11-9	MODIFIED BATTALION IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN MASS FORMATION		11-12	
11-10	BATTALION IN MASS FORMATION		11-13	

		PAGE
11-11	MODIFIED BATTALION IN MASS FORMATION	11-14
11-12	BATTALION IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES WITH COMPANIES IN LINE	11-15
11-13	BATTALION IN COLUMN WITH COMPANIES IN COLUMN	11-16

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 11

### BATTALION DRILL

### 11000. GENERAL

- 1. The formations described in this Chapter pertain to the infantry battalion. Using them as a guide, other units of corresponding size conform as appropriate.
- 2. Formations used by the battalion are: battalion in line with companies in line; battalion in column (of threes, etc.) with companies in column; battalion in line with companies in mass formation; battalion in mass formation; and battalion in column of companies with companies in line. In all these formations, the platoons that comprise the company will either be in line (each squad forming one rank) or in column (each squad forming one file). The battalion may also form column of twos or files in a manner similar to that prescribed for a company, in which case the companies are arranged as in column, except that each company is in column of twos or files. Formations of the battalion for drill and ceremonies, to include posts of officers and key staff noncommissioned officers, are shown in figures 11-1 through 11-13.
- 3. When the battalion commander is absent, the senior officer present with the battalion posts and drills the battalion as prescribed for the battalion commander. In the absence of the sergeant major, the senior noncommissioned officer posts and performs the duties of the sergeant major.
- 4. When officers are not present, after the battalion is formed, the sergeant major, or in his/her absence, the next senior staff noncommissioned officer posts and drills the battalion as prescribed for the battalion commander, and first sergeants posts and perform the duties of the company commanders. This also applies when, for any reason, the battalion commander directs the sergeant major (or senior staff noncommissioned officer) to take charge of the battalion for purposes other than dismissing the battalion. When this occurs, the officers retire and the sergeant major and first sergeants march by the most direct route to take post as the battalion commander and company commanders, respectively.
- 5. When practicable, the formation and movement of the subdivisions of the battalion should be made clear to subordinate commanders before starting the movement.
- 6. The battalion drills by command for formations and ceremonies where units of the battalion execute the manual, facings, and marching as one body at the command of execution of the battalion commander. The battalion in a manner similar to that prescribed for the company executes these movements.
- 7. To assume any formation, the battalion commander indicates the formation desired the point where the right (left) of the battalion is to be, and the direction in which the line or column is to face. Formations should be such that, in approaching the line on which the battalion forms, columns and lines are either perpendicular or parallel to the front.
- 8. Upon completing the movement ordered by the battalion commander, companies may be given "AT EASE" until another movement is ordered. After a ceremony has started, units remain at attention until ordered to stand at parade rest or at ease by the battalion commander or adjutant.

- 9. After a battalion is halted, its subdivisions make no movement to correct alignment or position unless so directed by the battalion commander.
- 10. When the battalion is presented to its commander or to a reviewing officer, the officer who makes the presentation faces the battalion and commands "Present, ARMS." When all elements of his/her unit are at present arms, he/she faces the front and salutes. Members of his/her staff salute and terminate the salute with him/her.
- 11. When the battalion commander does not take the formation, the executive officer (or in his/her absence, the next senior officer) is commander of troops. The commander of troops takes post, gives all commands, and receives all salutes prescribed for the battalion commander.
- 12. For close-order drill, marches and physical fitness training, the battalion headquarters command group is formed as directed by the battalion commander.
- 13. During battalion physical training and conditioning marches when the battalion is in column, the sergeant major will move from his/her normal position with the staff and assume a position to the left of the battalion commander. Normally the organizational colors are not carried during physical training or conditioning marches. However, if the battalion commander directs that they be taken they will form immediately to the rear of the battalion commander.

### 11001. RULES FOR BATTALION DRILL

- 1. The commands or orders of the battalion commander are given by voice, by bugle, by signal, or by means of staff officers or messengers who communicate them to commanders concerned.
- 2. Company commanders and platoon commanders give supplementary commands in the same manner as prescribed for company drill (see paragraph 10001).
- 3. The color guard is posted to the left of the color company when the company is in line and in rear when the company is in column. The color company is posted in the battalion formation so that the color guard is in the approximate center of the formation (right or forward of center, if this is impossible). The color guard may be omitted for daily battalion formations.
- 4. The adjutant posts the band when present.
- 5. Attached units take position as directed by the battalion commander and conform to the formation and movements of the battalion.
- 6. In whatever direction the battalion faces, the companies are designated numerically from right to left in line and from front to rear in column; that is, first company, second company, third company, etc.
- 7. The terms "right" and "left" apply to actual right and left as the troops face.
- 8. The designation "center company" indicates the right center or the actual center company, according to whether the number of companies is even or odd.
- 9. Personnel of the battalion Headquarters and Service Company may be attached to other companies of the battalion for ceremonies.

- 10. The battalion commander supervises the formation from such positions as will best enable him/her to correct alignments, intervals, and distances. With his/her staff (less the adjutant), he/she takes post in time to receive the report. The position of the staff may be modified during daily battalion formations.
- 11. For daily battalion formations at which promotions or awards will be effected the procedures for company awards ceremonies may be used (see paragraph 10014).
- 12. Any formation or combination of formations may be employed to meet existing conditions of space or purpose. Spacing between elements may also be adjusted as necessary.

## 11002. TO FORM FOR ROUTINE FORMATIONS

- 1. The following are the standard procedures for forming of the battalion for routine formations using modifications to standard formations as shown in figures 11-5, 11-9, and 11-11. These modified formations are normally used to form the battalion for daily formations for passing the word, promotion or award formations, or prior to battalion physical training and conditioning marches.
- a. The companies are formed by their staff noncommissioned officers/ noncommissioned officers and/or officers at their designated location as prescribed for company drill (see paragraph 10002.) Company commanders then position their companies in the prescribed formation where the battalion is to form. If the colors are to be carried the color guard and color company first receives the battalion colors (see paragraph 7302), then take their position in formation.
- b. The battalion staff will be posted to the right of the lead company as shown in figures 11-5, 11-9, and 11-11 under the command of the battalion executive officer.
- c. If the battalion is formed by enlisted personnel the procedures for reporting and posting for company drill (see paragraph 10002) will be used by the sergeant major and first sergeants. The staff will remain at ease until the battalion commander has assumed his/her position and is ready to receive the report from the sergeant major, at which time the staff will come to "ATTENTION."

# 11003. TO FORM FOR INSPECTIONS, DRILLS, MARCHES, OR PRIOR TO PARTICIPATION IN LARGER MARCHES OR CEREMONIES

- 1. The following are the standard procedures for a ceremonial forming of the battalion for those formations shown in figures 11-1, 11-6, 11-10, 11-12, and 11-13.
- a. At "Assembly" the companies are formed by their staff noncommissioned officers/noncommissioned officers and officers at their designated locations as prescribed for company drill (see paragraph 10002). Company commanders then position their companies in the prescribed formation where the battalion is to form. If the colors are to be carried the color guard and color company first receives the battalion colors (see paragraph 7302), then take their position in formation.
- b. The adjutant takes post 6 paces to the right of and facing where the right flank of the battalion will rest when forming in line (or 6 paces in front of and facing the leading guide of the leading company in column) draws sword if so armed, and supervises the positioning of the companies.

- c. If a band or field music is not present at the time for "Adjutant's Call," the adjutant marches by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and battalion commander when in line (or midway between the leading company commander and battalion commander in column), faces the battalion, and commands "Battalion, ATTENTION." The adjutant then faces the battalion commander, salutes and reports, "Sir/Ma'am, the battalion is formed." The battalion commander returns the salute and orders "TAKE YOUR POST." The adjutant passes to the battalion commander's right and takes his/her post in the staff. The battalion commander and staff then draw swords, if so armed and execute order sword. Then appropriate commands are given to conduct the inspection, drill, or march (If forming prior to participation in regimental or larger marches or ceremonies, the battalion awaits the second, or regimental "Adjutant's Call."
- d. If a band or field music is present, in lieu of bringing the battalion to attention by voice command, the adjutant may direct "Sound, ATTENTION." After "Attention" is sounded, the companies are brought to attention in succession from right to left when in line (front to rear in column), but remain at the order. Next, the adjutant orders "Sound, ADJUTANT'S CALL." Companies stand fast while "Adjutant's Call" is sounded. The adjutant then takes post midway between the line of company commanders and battalion commander when in line (midway between the drum major and battalion commander when in column) and reports that the battalion is formed.

# 11004. TO FORM IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN LINE FOR BATTALION FORMATIONS AND CEREMONIES

1. The following are procedures for the ceremonial forming of a battalion line with companies in line. Figure 11-1 depicts this formation.

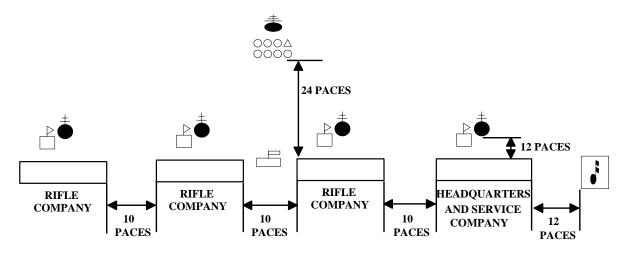


Figure 11-1.--Battalion in Line with Companies in Line.

a. At "Assembly" the companies are formed by their staff noncommissioned officers/noncommissioned officers and officers at their designated locations as prescribed in company drill (see paragraph 10002). The color guard and color company, after forming, receives the battalion colors (see paragraph 7302). The companies remain at their locations for assembly, or if directed by the battalion commander, move to positions closer to the battalion parade ground and await "Adjutant's Call" to form the battalion for the ceremony.

- b. The adjutant indicates the line on which the battalion is to form with two dress guidons on each flank. He/she takes post on the line 6 paces from and facing where the right flank of the battalion will rest, and draws sword if so armed. When the band is present, at the designated time the adjutant orders the band to "Sound, ATTENTION." At the sounding of "Attention," the companies are brought to attention and to right shoulder arms from front to rear or from right to left. After the entire battalion is at attention and at right shoulder arms, the adjutant orders the band to "Sound, ADJUTANT'S CALL."
- c. Companies are marched from the left flank of the parade field in column of threes (or fours) so as to arrive at positions on the line of troops successively from right to left. The command of execution for their movement is so timed that they will step off at the first note of the march following "Adjutant's Call."
- (1) As the company commander and guide arrive at a position abreast of their position in formation they execute a left flank, march forward to their positions and halt. The guide goes to order guidon; the company commander faces about towards the company and remains at carry sword, if so armed.
- (2) As each platoon approaches its position on the line, the platoon commander orders "GUIDE ON LINE." The platoon guide goes to port arms and double times to a position to the left of where the platoon's squad leaders will halt, halts facing the adjutant, and goes to order arms. (See figure 11-2.)

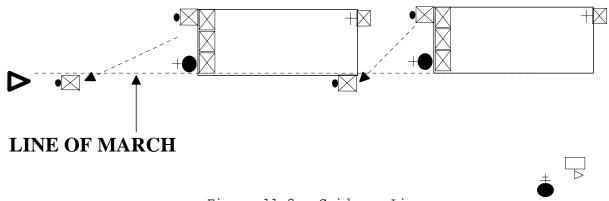


Figure 11-2.--Guide on Line.

(3) The company commander then gives the command "Mark Time, MARCH" so that the left squad leaders mark time beside the platoon guides. After 4-8 counts of mark time the company commander gives the command "Company, HALT." (See figure 11-3.) Once all platoons are halted the company commander gives the command to "Order, ARMS;" however, the platoon commander and platoon sergeant remain at carry sword, if so armed. The company commander then commands, "Left, FACE." The platoons, except for the guides, face to the left. Platoon sergeants go to order sword, if so armed. Platoon commanders, after facing left move to their position 6 paces in front of and centered on the platoon, halts from the oblique, with the platoon to his/her rear, and goes to order sword.

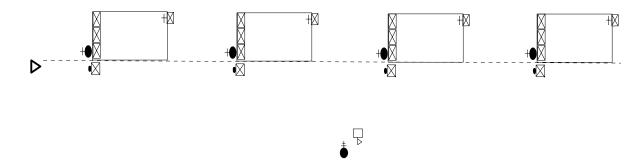


Figure 11-3.--Platoon Halt.

- (4) When all platoon commanders are in position and at order sword the company commander commands "DRESS RIGHT." Platoon commanders go to carry sword, face their platoons, and in sequence from right to left, command, "Dress Right, DRESS." The platoons are aligned as indicated in paragraph 9009. When the platoon commanders have finished aligning their platoons they command "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER," move back to their positions 6 paces and centered on their platoons, halt from the oblique, with the platoon to his/her rear, and goes to order sword. The company commander faces about and goes to order sword, if so armed.
- d. On the command of **"FRONT,"** by the first platoon commander in the line the adjutant moves by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and the battalion commander and faces the battalion. After all units have finished dressing right, the adjutant commands **"Guides, POST."** At the command **"POST,"** the guides move to their normal positions in ranks. To do this, the guides take one step forward, then take one step to the right, halts and execute an about face. (See figure 11-4.) If prescribed for the ceremony, the adjutant next commands **"Fix, BAYONETS."** After fixing bayonets, or after posting the guide if bayonets are not fixed the ceremony proceeds as for a parade in chapter 15, a review in chapter 16, or for any formation as appropriate.

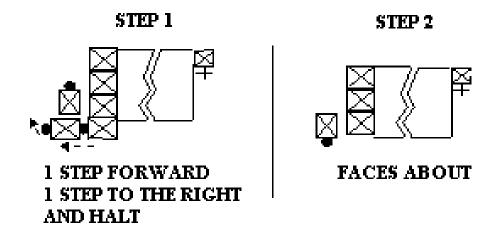


Figure 11-4.--Guides Post.

- e. In the case of well-drilled and rehearsed troops, executing the movement "GUIDE ON LINE" and "Guides, POST" may be deleted. The formation would march to position on the line of troop, mark time, halt, face left, order arms and dress right.
- f. If space or circumstances require, after forming at "Assembly," the companies may be directed to take their positions on the line of troops prior to "Adjutant's Call". In this case, procedures are as described above, except when "Attention" is sounded companies remain at order arms after being brought to attention, and at "Adjutant's Call" the companies stand fast (guides are not put on line). The adjutant then marches from the right of the line to his/her post front and center of, and facing the battalion. He/she causes the companies to dress to the right, fix bayonets (if prescribed), and the ceremony to proceed according to the type being conducted.
- 2. Figure 11-5 depicts modifications to the standard formation battalion in line with companies in line. The following procedures apply.
- a. March on is normally omitted and the battalion forms by companies at a predesignated location.
  - b. Enlisted personnel normally form the formation.
- c. The staff forms to the right of the first company under the command of the battalion executive officer. The adjutant remains with the staff.
  - d. The color guard may be omitted.
- e. Spacing and positioning of companies may be adjusted by the battalion commander to fit existing space or conditions.

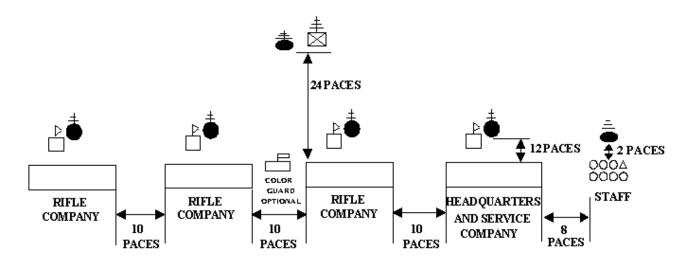


Figure 11-5.--Modified Battalion in Line with Companies in Line.

# 11005. TO FORM IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN MASS (EXTENDED MASS) FORMATION FOR BATTALION FORMATIONS AND CEREMONIES

1. Figure 11-6 depicts battalion in line with companies in mass formation. For the ceremonial forming the procedure is the same as in forming in line except that when marching on at " $Adjutant's\ Call."$ 

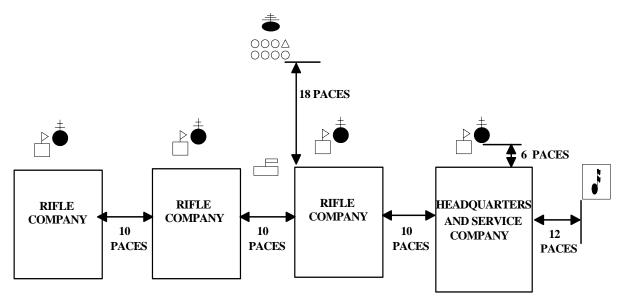


Figure 11-6.--Battalion in Line with Companies in Mass Formation.

a. Companies are marched from either flank in mass formation to their positions in line, the line of march being well in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company executes "Left (Right) Turn, MARCH." As soon as this turn has been initiated, the company commander commands "GUIDE OF RIGHT PLATOON ON LINE." At this command, the guide of the right platoon moves out at double time (at port arms) to the line indicated by the dress guidons, halts, goes to order arms, and faces the adjutant. (See figure 11-7) The guide indicates the right of the company.

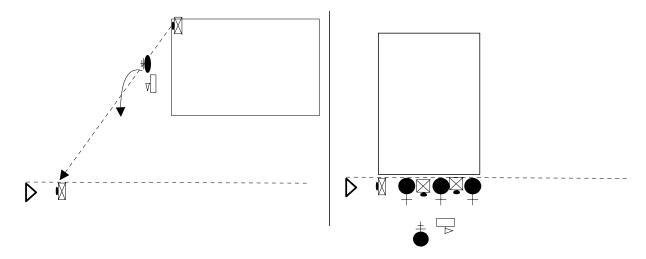


Figure 11-7.--Guide of the Right Platoon on Line.

- b. The company continues to march forward towards the line of troops. When approaching the company's position the company commander commands "Mark Time, MARCH." The company marks time 4-8 steps to obtain cover and alignment. The right squad leader marks time so as his/her chest is lightly touching the right elbow of the guide. The company commander and guide, after reaching their position, halt. The guide goes to order guidon. The company commander faces the company and gives the command "Company, HALT." The company commander while facing the company and commands "Order, ARMS" and "Dress Right (At Close Interval, Dress Right), DRESS." The first platoon commander aligns the company as described in paragraph 10005. When the platoon commander is back in position and at order sword, if so armed, the company commander commands "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER." The company commander then faces about and goes to order sword, if so armed.
- c. On the command of **"FRONT,"** by the first company commander in line the adjutant moves by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and the battalion commander and faces the battalion. After all units have finished dressing right, the adjutant commands **"Guides, POST."** At the command **"POST,"** the guides move to their normal positions in ranks. To do this, the guides take one step to the left, in marching, and halt at order arms.
- 2. Companies may be marched to positions in column of threes (or fours) instead of in mass formation as above. The procedure is the same as above except that:
- a. When the company commander and guide come abreast of the right flank of where the company will come to rest in the line of troops the company commander commands "Column Left, MARCH." The company commander, guide and leading platoon execute the column left. As soon as the column movement has been initiated, the company commander orders "GUIDE OF LEADING PLATOON ON LINE." The guide moves out to his/her position on the line as described in 11004.1. The company commander then commands, "Company Mass Left (Company Mass 3-6 Paces Left), MARCH."
- (1) The lead platoon commander as he/she approaches the guide, gives the command "Mark Time, MARCH." The right squad leader marks time so as his/her chest is lightly touching the right elbow of the guide. The remaining platoons, when abreast of their position, successively execute a column left and move into position on the left of the leading platoon at the designated interval and mark time at the command of their platoon commander. (See figure 11-8.)
- (2) The company commander and guide oblique to their positions and halt, facing front. The guide goes to order guidon and remains at attention. The company commander faces the company. When all platoons are marking time the company commander commands "Company, HALT;" "Order, ARMS;" and "Dress Right (At Close Interval, Dress Right), DRESS" as described in paragraph 10005. After the company is dressed and the platoon commander is back in position the company commander commands, "Ready, FRONT" and "COVER."
- b. On the command of **"FRONT,"** by the first company commander in line the adjutant moves by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and the battalion commander and faces the battalion. After all units have finished dressing right, the adjutant commands **"Guides, POST."** At the command **"POST,"** the guides move to their normal positions in ranks. To do this, the guides take one step to the left, in marching, and halt at order arms.

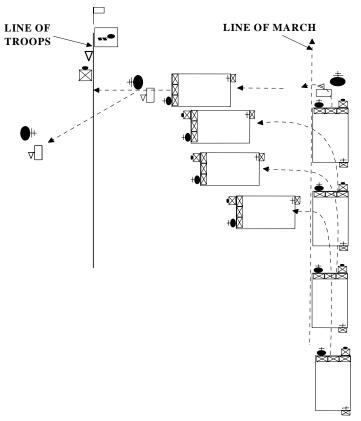


Figure 11-8.--Forming a Company Mass Left.

3. The following figure 11-9 depicts modifications to the standard formation battalion in line with companies in mass formations. The procedures and rules in paragraph 11005 apply to this modification of the standard formation.

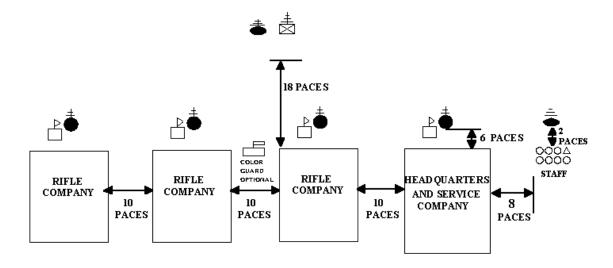


Figure 11-9.--Modified Battalion in Line with Companies in Mass Formation.

## 11006. TO FORM BATTALION IN MASS

1. The procedure is the same as in forming in line except that companies are marched from either flank in company mass formation at close or normal interval, the line of march being well in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company commander executes left (right) turn. As soon as the turning movement has been initiated, the company commander commands "GUIDE OF LEADING PLATOON ON LINE." The guide moves out at double time (at port arms), and takes his/her position on the line of troops as described in paragraph 11004.1. The company then marks time to gain cover and alignment and is halted so that there is appropriate interval (normal or close) between companies. The company is given order arms and the guide, without command, takes his/her post by taking one step to the left, in marching, and halts at order arms. The color guard, depending on the ceremony forms either 6 paces behind the staff or if the battalion is part of a regimental or larger formation is omitted. Figure 11-10 depicts the standard formation.

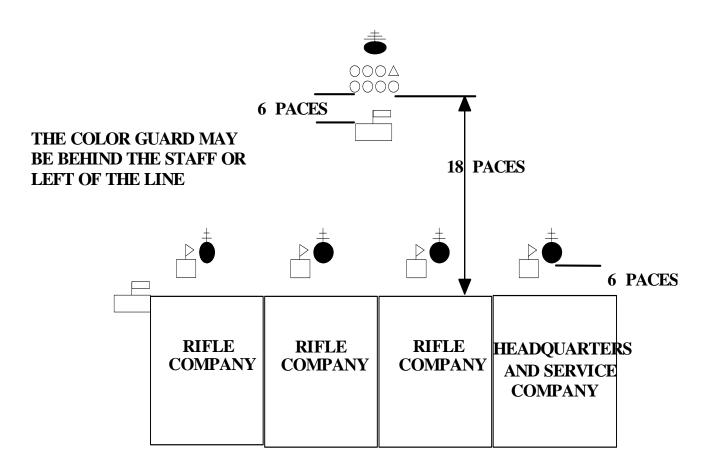


Figure 11-10.--Battalion in Mass Formation.

2. Figure 11-11 depicts the modified version of the battalion mass formation. The procedures and rules that apply in paragraph 11005 apply to this modified formation also.

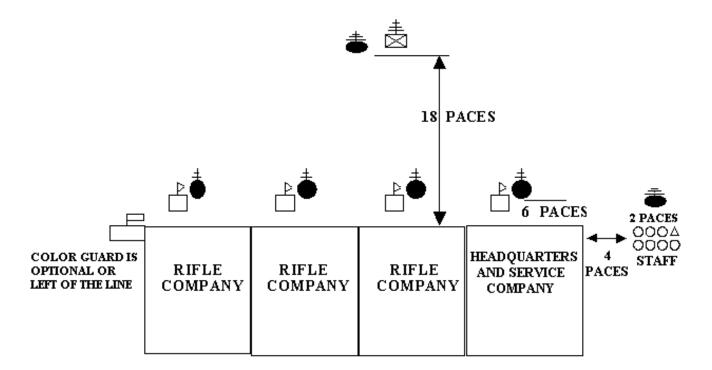


Figure 11-11.--Modified Battalion in Mass Formation.

11007. BATTALION IN COLUMN WITH COMPANIES IN COLUMN. This formation is used to move the battalion from one point to another as a whole unit. It can be used for forming in an assembly area prior to the march on during a ceremony, for battalion movement, for physical training and as the battalion commander may direct. The companies form either in mass or company column. Figure 11-12 depicts this formation.

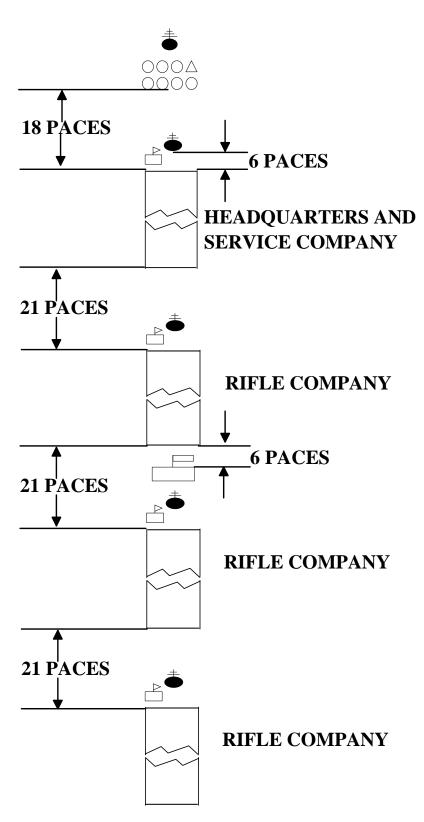


Figure 11-12.-- Battalion in Column of Companies with Companies in Line.

11008. BATTALION IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES WITH COMPANIES IN LINE. This formation is used for either a large review, ceremony or for inspecting a unit. It is formed as depicted in figure 11-13.

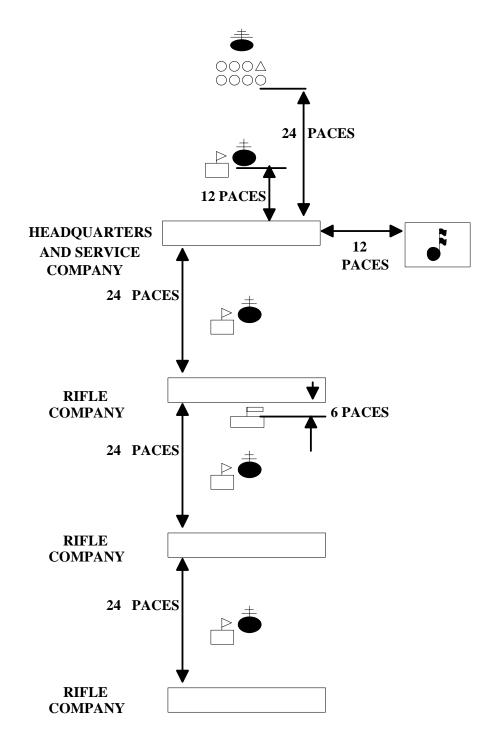


Figure 11-13.--Battalion in Column with Companies in Column.

## 11009. TO DISMISS THE BATTALION

- 1. The battalion commander commands "DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES." At this command, each company commander salutes the battalion commander. He/she returns the salutes. Each company commander marches his/her company to the place for dismissal and dismisses it as prescribed in paragraph 10003. If colors were carried, the color company or color guard first returns the colors per paragraph 7304.
- 2. The companies having marched off, the battalion commander dismisses his/her staff. In modified formations the executive officer would take charge and dismiss the staff.
- 3. In case the battalion commander desires to release companies to their commanders, without prescribing that the companies promptly be dismissed, he/she commands "TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR COMPANIES." Company commander's salute and the battalion commander returns the salute. The company commanders then take charge of their companies.
- 4. If the battalion commander turns the battalion over to the sergeant major for dismissal during modified formations then the procedures for dismissal in paragraph 10003 will be followed.

# PART I: DRILL

## CHAPTER 12

# REGIMENTAL DRILL

	PARAGRAPGH	PAGE		
GENERAL	12000	12-3		
COMMANDS AND ORDERS	12001	12-3		
FORMATIONS				
TO FORM THE REGIMENT	12003	12-4		
TO DISMISS THE REGIMENT	12004	12-10		
FIGURE				
12-1 POSITION OF REGIMENTAL AND BATTALION ADJUTANTS		12-5		
12-2 FORMING THE REGIMENT		12-6		
12-3 REGIMENT IN COLUMN WITH BATTALIONS IN COLUMN; COMPANIES IN MASS		12-7		
12-4 REGIMENT IN COLUMN WITH BATTALIONS IN MASS FORMATION		12-8		
12-5 REGIMENT IN LINE WITH BATTALIONS IN MASS FORMATION		12-8		
12-6 REGIMENT IN LINE WITH BATTALIONS IN LINE, COMPANY MASS FORMATION		12-9		

PART I: DRILL

CHAPTER 12

#### REGIMENTAL DRILL

# 12000. GENERAL

- 1. The formations described in this Chapter pertain to the infantry regiment. Using them as a guide, other units of corresponding or larger size conform as appropriate.
- 2. Subordinate battalions and independent companies will assemble with the regimental color guard, staff, and commander to form the regiment.
- 3. Subordinate battalions will retain all members of their unit, except for their color guard, when formed with the regiment.
- 4. The regiment does not drill by command. Its battalions form and march as directed by the regimental commander. When practicable, the formation and movement of the subdivisions of the regiment should be made clear to subordinate commanders before starting the movement.
- 5. The regimental commander prescribes the formation, the uniform, individual and unit equipment, the place where the regiment is to form, the direction in which it will face, the hour of forming, location of the head of column (or right of the line), and the order in column or line of the headquarters, band, battalions, special and attached units, and trains.
- 6. Before the regiment is formed, the regimental commander may cause the positions that are to be taken by the larger elements to be indicated by markers.
- 7. Upon completing a movement ordered by the regimental commander, battalions and independent companies may be given "REST" until another movement is ordered. After a ceremony has started, however, units remain at attention until ordered to stand at parade rest or at ease by the regimental commander, adjutant, or commander of troops.
- 8. Prior to forming the regiment for any purpose, at the locations designated, each independent company forms at "Assembly" (see paragraph 10002), and each battalion forms without its colors at the first, or its own, "Adjutant's Call" (see paragraph 11003). The color guard and color battalion, after forming, receives the regimental colors (see paragraph 7302) prior to ceremonies or other prescribed occasions. All units then wait for the second or regimental "Adjutant's Call" to form the regiment.

# 12001. COMMANDS AND ORDERS

- 1. The regimental commander gives his/her commands by voice, by bugle, by signal, or in writing. They may be given directly to the officers concerned or communicated to them through his/her staff.
- 2. When the regimental commander, adjutant or commander of troops gives commands for drill movements to be executed by the troops, the command is given as a combined command in a voice just loud enough to be distinctly heard by

subordinate commanders so as not to cause premature execution by the troops. Subordinate battalion and independent company commanders, in succession from right to left in line, or front to rear in column, then face their command and give the necessary preparatory command and command of execution to cause the movement to be executed by their troops. For example, the regimental adjutant orders "PRESENT ARMS" in a manner that does not demand execution by the troops. Each subordinate commander then goes to carry sword if so armed, faces his/her command and commands "Present, ARMS," the commander then faces back to the front and commands "Staff, Present, SWORD (ARMS)." When the adjutant commands "ORDER ARMS," the subordinate commanders command "Staff, Order, SWORD (ARMS)." They would then face their command and command the troops to "Order, ARMS," and then face back to the front and go to order sword if so armed.

3. For example, after the adjutant has presented the regiment to the regimental commander, the normal sequence of events would call for the manual of arms to be performed. The regimental commander would command "ORDER ARMS." Subordinate commanders command "Staff, Order, SWORD (ARMS)." They would then face their command and command the troops to "Order, ARMS." The manual arms will then be executed in sequence as shown below with each battalion commander facing about after each command.

The Regimental Commander Commands:

Subordinate Commanders (in succession)
Command :

"PORT ARMS"
"RIGHT SHOULDER ARMS"
"PORT ARMS"
"LEFT SHOULDER ARMS"
"PORT ARMS"
"ORDER ARMS"

"Port, ARMS"
"Right Shoulder, ARMS"
"Port, ARMS"
"Left Shoulder, ARMS"
"Port, ARMS"
"Order, ARMS"

## 12002. FORMATIONS

- 1. For formations of the regiment see figures 12-2 through 12-5.
- 2. The color guard is posted to the left of the color battalion when the regiment is in line and to the rear of the color battalion when the regiment is in column. The color battalion is posted in the regimental formation so that the color guard is in the approximate center of the formation (right or forward of center, if exact center is impossible).

### 12003. TO FORM THE REGIMENT

- 1. To form for regimental ceremonies the procedures described for forming battalions in line in paragraphs 11004 and 11005, or battalions in mass formation in paragraph 11006 are followed, except as indicated below:
- a. Prior to the start of the ceremony, the battalion adjutants take their posts behind the line of march and abreast of their position in the line of troops, draw swords if so armed, and go to parade rest. The regimental adjutant, when directed by the regimental commander or commander of troops, moves to his/her position in the line of troops, (8 paces to the right of where the right flank of the regiment will rest) faces down the line, and draws sword if so armed. The regimental adjutant then commands "Sound, ATTENTION." The band plays "Attention," and the battalion adjutants go to attention and carry sword.

The regimental adjutant then commands "Sound, ADJUTANT'S CALL." On the first note of the music after "Adjutant's Call," the battalion adjutants march forward to their position in the line of troops (6 paces to the right of where the right flank of their battalions will rest), face down the line, and remain at attention and carry sword if so armed. (See figure 12-1.)

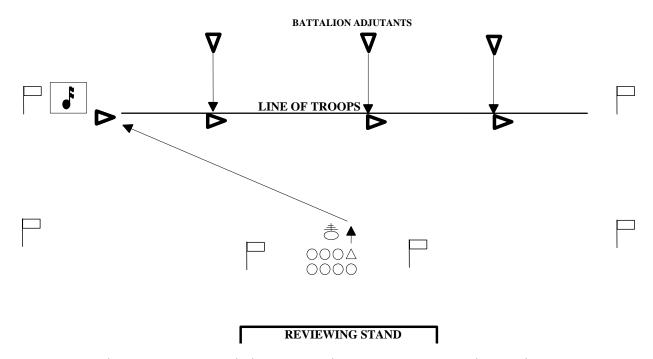


Figure 12-1.--Position of Regimental and Battalion Adjutants.

- b. After the lead element of the regiment has completed dressing to the right and on the command of execution "FRONT," from its commander, the regimental adjutant moves to his/her position centered on the formation and midway between the line of battalion commanders and the regimental commander, and faces the regiment remaining at attention and carry sword if so armed. After the lead element of their battalion has completed dressing to the right and on the command of execution "FRONT," from its commander, the battalion adjutants return to their position in the battalion staff, and go to order sword if so armed. Once all elements of the regiment have completed dressing to the right and the battalion adjutants are back in their respective staff, the regimental adjutant commands "Guides, POST," (if the units were marched on) and "FIX BAYONETS" (if prescribed). The ceremony would then proceed per chapters 15 through 20.
- 2. To form for marches, or prior to participation in a larger unit ceremony, the regiment forms at its designated location at regimental "Adjutant's Call" (which may be by voice command or by music) according to the same procedures set forth for a battalion in paragraph 11003, except commanders of battalions and independent companies report their arrival in the regimental formation to the regimental adjutant. Figure 12-2 depicts a regiment formed for a parade or review.

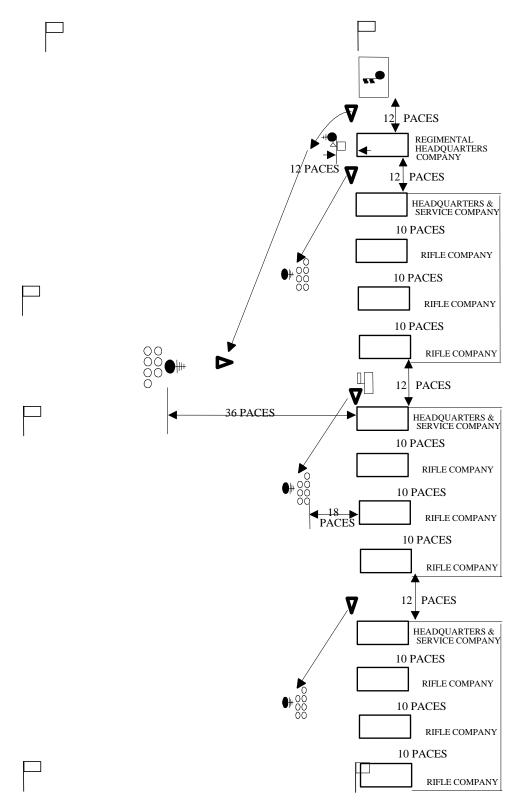


Figure 12-2.--Forming the Regiment.

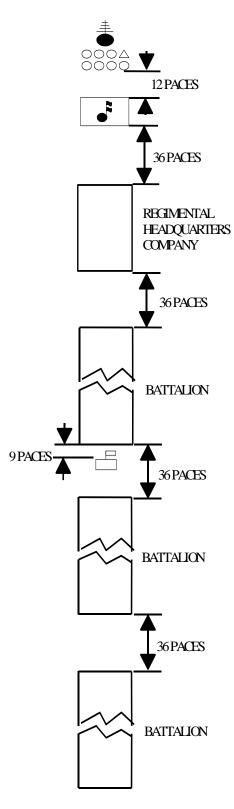


Figure 12-3.--Regiment in Column with Battalions in Column; Companies in Mass.

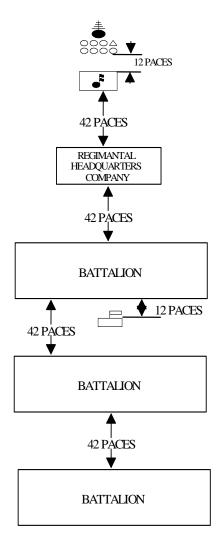


Figure 12-4.--Regiment in Column with Battalions in Mass Formation.

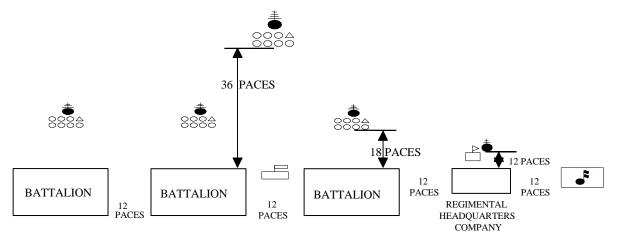


Figure 12-5.--Regiment in Line with Battalions in Mass Formation.

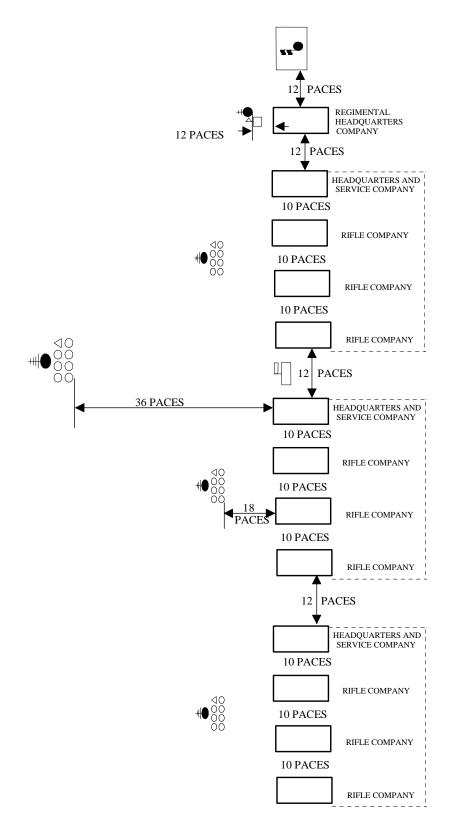


Figure 12-6.--Regiment in Line with Battalions in Line, Company Mass Formation.

12004. TO DISMISS THE REGIMENT. To dismiss the regiment, the regimental commander orders the battalion, and independent company commanders to dismiss their commands.